

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #1

## Doing Some Sightseeing in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# 1

# RUSSIAN

1. ЭКСКУРСОВОД: Уважаемые туристы, это Красная площадь. Слева находится Мавзолей В.И.Ленина, а справа - знаменитый Храм Василия Блаженного.
2. АЛЕКС: Восхитительный собор! Простите, а напротив Кремля, это университет?
3. ЭКСКУРСОВОД: Нет, это не университет, это большой торговый центр.
4. АЛЕКС: А вон то здание, это музей?
5. ЭКСКУРСОВОД: Да, это Государственный исторический музей.
6. АЛЕКС: Ого! Целый дворец!

# ROMANIZATION

1. EKSKURSOVOD: Uvazhayemyye turisty, eto Krasnaya ploshchad'. Sleva nakhoditsya Mavzoley V.I.Lenina, a sprava - znamenityy Khram Vasiliya Blazhennogo.
2. ALEX: Voskhititel'nyy sobor! Prostite, a naprotiv Kremlya, eto universitet?
3. EKSKURSOVOD: Net, eto ne universitet, eto bol'shoy trgovyy tsentr.
4. ALEX: A von to zdaniye, eto muzey?
5. EKSKURSOVOD: Da, eto Gosudarstvennyy istoricheskiy muzey.

CONT'D OVER

6. ALEX: Ogo! Tselyy dvorets!

## ENGLISH

1. TOUR GUIDE: Dear tourists, this is Red Square. The Lenin Mausoleum is situated on the left side and the famous St. Basil's Cathedral is on the right side.

2. ALEX: What a wonderful church! Excuse me, but is that a university opposite the Kremlin?

3. TOUR GUIDE: No, it's not a university, it's a big shopping mall.

4. ALEX: And that building, is it a museum?

5. TOUR GUIDE: Yes, it's the State Historical Museum.

6. ALEX: Wow! A great big palace!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
справа от	sprava ot	to the right of; on someone or something's right	preposition, phrase	
слева от	slyeva ot	to the left of; on the left of; on someone or something's left	preposition, phrase	

Ого	ogo	wow!		
здание	zdanie	building	noun	neutral
музей	muzey	museum	noun	masculine
напротив	naprotiv	opposite	preposition	
находиться	nahodit'sya	to be located, situated		verb
уважаемые	uvazhayemye	dear	adjective, plural	
знаменитый	znamyeniyy	famous, well- known	adjective	masculine
дворец	dvorets	palace	noun	masculine

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Садись справа от меня.</b> <i>Sadis' sprava ot myenya.</i></p> <p>"Sit on my right."</p>	<p><b>Справа от кресла стоит стол.</b> <i>Sprava ot kryesla stoit stol.</i></p> <p>"To the right of the armchair there is a table."</p>
<p><b>Ого! Ты выиграл!</b> <i>Ogo! Ty vyigral!</i></p> <p>"Wow! You won!"</p>	<p><b>Это здание - новый торговый центр.</b> <i>Eto zdaniye - novyy torgovyy tsentr.</i></p> <p>"This building is a new shopping center."</p>
<p><b>Сегодня я хочу пойти в музей вместе с братом.</b> <i>Segodnya ya khochu poyti v muzey vmeste s bratom.</i></p> <p>"Today I want to go to the museum with my brother."</p>	<p><b>- Ты где сейчас? - Я жду тебя напротив кафе.</b> <i>- Ty gde seychas? - Ya zhdu tebya naprotiv kafe.</i></p> <p>"- Where are you now? - I'm waiting for you opposite the cafe."</p>



<p><b>Этот сосед живёт напротив.</b> <i>Etot sosed zhivyot naprotiv.</i></p> <p>"This neighbor lives opposite (me)."</p>	<p><b>Это дом напротив банка.</b> <i>Eto dom naprotiv banka.</i></p> <p>"It's the house opposite the bank."</p>
<p><b>Где находится центральный банк?</b> <i>Gdye nahoditsya tsyentral'nyy bank?</i></p> <p>"Where's the central bank situated?"</p>	<p><b>Уважаемые посетители, просим Вас не кормить животных.</b> <i>Uvazhayemyye posetiteli, prosim Vas ne kormit' zivotnykh.</i></p> <p>"Dear visitors, please do not feed the animals."</p>
<p><b>Майкл Джексон - знаменитый певец.</b> <i>Maykl Dzhekson - znamenityy pevets.</i></p> <p>"Michael Jackson is a famous singer."</p>	<p><b>Я не знал, что он знаменитый актёр.</b> <i>Ya ne znal, chto on znamenitiy aktyor.</i></p> <p>"I didn't know he was a famous actor."</p>
<p><b>Он уже не так знаменит, как раньше.</b> <i>On uzhye ne tak znamyeniit, kak ran'shye.</i></p> <p>"He's not as famous as he used to be before."</p>	<p><b>Знаменитый Зимний Дворец находится в Санкт-Петербурге.</b> <i>Znamenitiy Zimniy Dvorets nakhoditsya v Sankt-Peterburge.</i></p> <p>"The famous Winter Palace is situated in Saint Petersburg."</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

The first key word for this lesson is **Уважаемые** (*Uvazhayemyye*), which can be translated as "Dear."

Example from the dialogue:

- Уважаемые туристы, это Красная площадь.**  
*Uvazhayemyye turisty, eto Krasnaya ploshchad'.*

"Dear tourists, this is Red Square."

The word *Уважаемые* (*Uvazhayemyye*) is the plural form of the word *Уважаемый* (*Uvazhayemyy*), masculine, *Уважаемая* (*Uvazhayemaya*), feminine.

This word is a very polite way to address to a third party and can be used at official presentations, meetings, announcements, in official letters etc. The phrase *Уважаемые* (*Uvazhayemye*) should be put at the beginning of the sentence.

For example:

1. **Уважаемые дамы и господа, Вас приветствует компания "Аэрофлот" на борту нашего самолета Airbus A330.**  
*Uvazhayemye damy i gospoda, Vas privetstvuyet kompaniya "Aeroflot" na bortu nashogo samoleta Airbus A330.*  
"Dear Ladies and Gentlemen, Aeroflot company welcomes you on board of our plane Airbus A330."
2. **В зоопарке: Уважаемые посетители, просим Вас не кормить животных.**  
*V zooparke: Uvazhayemye posetiteli, prosim Vas ne kormit' zhyvotnykh.*  
"At the zoo: "Dear visitors, please do not feed the animals."

The next keyword for this lesson is an interjection **Ого!** (*Ogo!*).

Example from the dialogue:

1. **Ого! Целый дворец!**  
*Ogo! Tselyy dvorets!*  
"Wow! A great big Palace!"

The interjection Oro is used when we want to emphasize our feelings of astonishment, surprise; that something is unexpectedly better or worse than we expected. Such feelings are usually strong and sudden.

In written Russian, the interjection Oro should be separated by a comma or an exclamation mark. The interjection Oro can be used either with other words in the sentence or separately.

For example:

1. **-Это платье стоит 10 000 долларов.**

*Eto plat'ye stoit 10 000 dollarov.*

"This dress costs 10,000 dollars."

**Ого! Как дорого!**

*Ogo! Kak dorogo!*

"Oho! How expensive!"

In this sentence the interjection "Oho!" emphasizes the feeling of unpleasant surprise because of the dress being unexpectedly expensive.

1. **-Я выиграл в лотерею!**

*Ya vyigral v lotereyu!*

"I won the lottery!"

**Сколько?**

*Skol'ko?*

"How much?"

**15 000 долларов.**

*15 000 dollarov.*

"15 000 dollars."

**Ого!**

*Ogo! "Wow!"*

In this sentence the interjection "Ogo!" emphasizes the astonishment of a huge amount of money won in the lottery. Whether the amount of money is huge or not depends on the speaker's opinion.

## GRAMMAR

**The Focus of this Lesson is How to Say "This is..." and "This is not.." in Russian**

**Нет, это не банк, это торговый центр.**

**"No, this is not a bank, this is a shopping center."**

---

Grammatical structure:

**Q: Это музей?**

*Eto muzey?*

**А: Да, это музей.**

*Da, eto muzey.*

**А: Нет, это не музей.**

*Net, eto ne muzey.*

Q: "Is this a museum?"

A: "Yes, this is a museum."

A: "No, this is not a museum."

This grammar is quite simple. The phrase "This is" could be literally translated as *Это есть (Eto est')*, where *Это (Eto)* means "This" and *есть (est')* means "to be." In this grammatical structure, the verb "to be" should be elided, in other words, omitted. So instead of saying *Это есть музей (Eto est' muzey?)* you should simply say *Это музей (Eto muzey)*.

The affirmative answer has the following structure:

**"Yes, this is..."/Да, это.... (Da, eto..)**

For example:

- Это парк? (*Eto park?*) - Да, это парк. (*Da, eto park.*)

- "Is this a park?" - "Yes, this is a park."

A negative answer has the following structure:

**"No, this is not..."/Нет, это не....(Net, eto ne...)**

As in English, in Russian, the negative answer has double negation: **Нет**, это **не**...(*Net, eto ne....*) **No**, this is **not**...

For example:

- Это парк? (*Eto park?*) -Нет, это не парк. (*Net, eto ne park.*)

- "Is this a park?" - "No, this is not a park."

**Note: Be careful about your intonation.**

This question can be asked in two ways by using two different intonations. Depending on the

intonation the answer will also differ.

The first type of intonation is: **Эт о музей?** (*Eto muzey?*) "Is this a **museum?**" the stress should be put on the word **музей** (*muzey*) "**museum.**" This type of question means that the speaker is not sure whether this building is a museum or, for example, a bank. The answer to this question is: *Да, это музей* (*Da, eto muzey*), "Yes, this is a museum" or *Нет, это не музей* (*Net, eto ne muzey*), "No, this is not a museum."

The second type of intonation is **Эт о музей?** (*Eto muzey?*) "**Is it a museum?**" The stress should be put on the word **Эт о** (*Eto*) "**Is it.**" This type of question means that a speaker is probably thinking that this building is a museum but needs confirmation of it. The answer to this question will be: *Да, это* (*Da, eto*), "Yes, it is" or *Нет, не это* (*Net, ne eto*), "No, it is not."

### Language Tip

---

All consonants in Russian can be divided into voiced and voiceless. Some letters denote only one sound, for example *щ* whereas others can denote two sounds, for example *з, д, б, о* and so on. What does it depend on? It depends on their position and whether they are stressed or unstressed. Let's take a closer look.

**О** - {*a*} and {*o*}. Here is the rule: If the letter *О* is stressed we should read and pronounce it as *o*. If the letter *О* is unstressed we should read and pronounced it as *A*.

For example:

---

**вода**

[*vada* - "water"]

Last "a" is stressed.

**большой**

[*bal'shoy* - "big"] First "o" is unstressed.

**торговый центр**

[*targovyy tsentr* - "shopping center"]

First "o" is unstressed, whereas second "o" is stressed.

**это**

[*eta* - "this"]

"O" is unstressed.

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Places to See in

Russia is rich for sightseeing places. There are plenty of UNESCO World Heritage Sites (both natural and of artificial origin) such as the Golden Mountains of Altai (Золотые горы Алтая), the mysterious Lake Baikal (озеро Байкал), Moscow Kremlin (Кремль) and Red Square (Красная площадь), the Historic Center of St. Petersburg (Исторический центр Санкт Петербурга) and so on. But one of the most famous sightseeing places, one of the symbols of Russia for many foreign tourists is Saint Basil's Cathedral.

The construction of the Cathedral started around the year 1555 on the order of Ivan the Terrible and was accompanied by many legends. As the saying goes, the architects went on to build the most beautiful and gorgeous cathedral in the world. In order for the architects not to be able to set the same or even more magnificent church, Ivan the Terrible ordered that they be blinded. Nowadays, the Saint Basil's Cathedral works only as a museum and is still considered to be one of the most beautiful cathedrals in the world.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #2

## Read Some Russian Literature!

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# 2

## RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Здравствуйте, можно посмотреть вон тот большой англо-русский словарь и вон ту книгу, автор А.П. Чехов?
2. ПРОДАВЕЦ: Книга называется "Вишнёвый сад"?
3. АЛЕКС: Да.
4. ПРОДАВЕЦ: Пожалуйста. Словарь очень хороший и недорогой, а книга очень интересная.
5. АЛЕКС: Отлично! Сколько с меня?
6. ПРОДАВЕЦ: 500 рублей, пожалуйста.

## ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Zdravstvuyte, mozhno posmotret' von tot bol'shoy anglo-russkiy slovar' i von tu knigu, avtor A.P. Chekhov?
2. PRODAVETS: Kniga nazyvayetsya "Vishnyovyy sad"?
3. ALEKS: Da.
4. PRODAVETS: Pozhaluysta. Slovar' ochen' khoroshiy i nedorogoy, a kniga ochen' interesnaya.
5. ALEKS: Otlichno! Skol'ko s menya?
6. PRODAVETS: 500 rubley, pozhaluysta.

## ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER



1. ALEX: Hello, can I have a look at that big English-Russian dictionary and that book over there by the author Anton Chekhov?
2. SELLER: Is the book called "The Cherry Orchard?"
3. ALEX: Yes.
4. SELLER: Here they are. The dictionary is very good and inexpensive, and the book is very interesting.
5. ALEX: Great! How much do I owe you?
6. SELLER: Five hundred rubles, please.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
сад	sad	garden, orchard	noun	masculine
посмотреть	posmotret'	to look, to take a look	verb (perfective)	
большой	bol'shoy	big, large	adjective	masculine
словарь	slovar'	dictionary	noun	masculine
хороший	khoroshiy	good	adjective	masculine
недорогой	nedorogoy	inexpensive	adjective	masculine
пожалуйста	pozhaluysta	please; you are welcome	interjection	
интересная	interesnaya	interesting	adjective	feminine
отлично	otlichno	great, perfectly	adverb	

очень

ochen'

very, very much

adverb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>В саду цветут цветы.</b> <i>V sadu tsvetut tsvety.</i></p> <p>"The flowers are blooming in the garden."</p>	<p><b>Можно посмотреть эти часы?</b> <i>Mozhno posmotret' eti chasy?</i></p> <p>"Can I have a look at this watch?"</p>
<p><b>Я очень хочу посмотреть этот фильм.</b> <i>Ya ochen' khochu posmotret' etot fil'm.</i></p> <p>"I want to see this movie very much."</p>	<p><b>Аэропорт “Шереметьево” очень большой.</b> <i>Aeroport “Sheremet'yevu” ochen' bol'shoy.</i></p> <p>"The Airport 'Sheremetyevo' is very big."</p>
<p><b>Это слишком большой размер для тебя.</b> <i>Eto slishkom bol'shoy razmer dlya tebya.</i></p> <p>"This size is too big for you."</p>	<p><b>Аляска – самый большой штат в Америке.</b> <i>Alyaska – samyy bol'shoy shtat v Amerike.</i></p> <p>"Alaska is the biggest state in America."</p>
<p><b>Мне нужно купить англо-русский словарь.</b> <i>Mne nuzhno kupit' anglo-russkiy slovar'.</i></p> <p>"I need to buy an English-Russian dictionary."</p>	<p><b>Это словарь.</b> <i>Eto slovar'.</i></p> <p>"It's a dictionary."</p>
<p><b>Этот телефон недорогой и хороший.</b> <i>Etot telefon nedorogoy i khoroshiy.</i></p> <p>"This phone is good quality and good value."</p>	<p><b>Это очень хороший фотоаппарат.</b> <i>Eto ochen' khoroshiy fotoapparat.</i></p> <p>"It's a very good camera."</p>
<p><b>Недорогой бизнес-ланч можно заказать в кафе “Москва”.</b> <i>Nedorogoy biznes-lanch mozhno zakazat' v kafe “Moskva”.</i></p> <p>"You can order a cheap lunch in cafe "Moscow"."</p>	<p><b>Очень вкусно, спасибо.</b> <i>Ochyen' vkusno, spasibo.</i></p> <p>"It's very tasty, thank you."</p>

<p><b>Большое спасибо!</b> <i>Bol'shoye spasibo!</i></p> <p>"Thank you very much!"</p>	<p><b>- Спасибо. - Пожалуйста.</b> <i>- Spasibo. - Pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>-"Thank you." -"You are welcome."</p>
<p><b>Эта книга очень интересная.</b> <i>Eta kniga ochen' interesnaya.</i></p> <p>"This book is very interesting."</p>	<p><b>Я чувствую себя отлично!</b> <i>Ya chuvstvuyu sebya otlichno!</i></p> <p>"I feel great!"</p>
<p><b>Отлично! Ты сдал этот экзамен!</b> <i>Otlichno! Ty sdal etot ekzamen!</i></p> <p>"Excellent! You passed the exam!"</p>	<p><b>Эта книга очень интересная.</b> <i>Eta kniga ochen' interesnaya.</i></p> <p>This book is very interesting.</p>
<p><b>Сегодня очень холодно.</b> <i>Segodnya ochen' kholodno.</i></p> <p>It's very cold today.</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

The first key word for this lesson is **Пожалуйста** (*Pozhaluysta*).

Examples from dialog:

1. **Пожалуйста. Словарь очень хороший и недорогой, а книга очень интересная.**  
*Pozhaluysta. Slovar' ochen' khoroshiy i nedorogoy, a kniga ochen' interesnaya.*  
"Here they are. The dictionary is very good and inexpensive, and the book is very interesting."
2. **500 рублей, пожалуйста.**  
*500 rublej, pozhaluysta.*  
"500 rubles, please."

The word "**пожалуйста**" can also be used when we give or pass something to another person and emphasize politeness. It is also used when a person agrees to meet a request or gives permission.

For example:

1. **Q: Не могли бы вы передать мне соль?**

**A: Пожалуйста.**

*Ne mogli by vy peredat' mne sol'?*

*Pozhaluysta.*

"Could you pass me the salt?"

"Here it is."

2. **Q: Можно здесь сесть?**

**A: Пожалуйста.**

*Mozhno zdes' sest'?*

*Pozhaluysta.*

"Can I sit here?" "Sure."

In this example the word "**пожалуйста**" (*pozhaluysta*) means that you got permission to sit down. It is a synonym of a positive answer such as "**Да**" (*da*) "yes", "**Да, конечно**" (*Da, konechno*) "Yes, of course," but "**пожалуйста**" is more polite.

For example:

1. **Q: Можно сесть?**

**A: Да/Да, конечно/Пожалуйста/Да, пожалуйста.**

*Mozhno sest'?*

*Pozhaluysta.*

"Can I sit down?"

"Yes/Yes, of course/Sure/Yes, sure."

The next keyword for this lesson is an adverb **Отлично** (*Otlichno*).

Example from the dialogue:

1. **Отлично! Сколько с меня?**

*Otlichno! Skol'ko s menya?*

"Great! How much do I owe you?"

The adverb "**отлично**" (*otlichno*) is used when we want to express that a situation, or

someone's actions are good, great or even excellent. In our dialogue Alex was totally satisfied with the price and quality of the dictionary, so he expressed his satisfaction by using the word "**Отлично!**" (*Otlichno*) "Great!"

For example:

1. **Q: Завтра будет солнечно.**  
**A: Отлично! Давай сходим на речку?**  
*Zavtra budet solnechno.*  
*Otlichno! Davay skhodim na rechku?*  
"Tomorrow will be sunny."  
"Excellent! Let's go to the river?"

## GRAMMAR

**The Focus of this Lesson is Genders in Russian.**

**Здравствуйте, можно посмотреть вон тот большой англо-русский словарь и вон ту книгу, автор А.П. Чехов?**

*Zdravstvuyte, možno posmotret' von tot bol'shoy anglo-russkiy slovar' i von tu knigu, avtor A.P. Chekhov?*

**"Hello, can I have a look at that big English-Russian dictionary and that book by the author —Anton Chekhov?"**

---

All nouns in Russian have one of three genders: masculine, feminine or neuter. But how can you find out what gender a noun has? It really is very simple. In Russian there are several rules that can help you to determine the gender of a noun. Today we will have a closer look at one of them. The first rule can be called "ending's rule." In accordance with this rule you can guess a gender of a noun by looking at its ending.

**Masculine nouns** have the following endings:

1. - [ **consonant** ] For example: **банк** *bank* ("bank"), **стол** *stol* ("table"), **автор** *avtor* ("author").
2. - [ **й** ] For example: **май** *may* ("May"), **музей** *muzey* ("museum"), **воробей** *vorobey* ("sparrow").

3. - [ ь ] For example: **словарь** *slovar'* ("dictionary"), **огонь** *ogon'* ("fire"), **конь** *kon'* ("horse").
4. - [ ий ] For example: **санаторий** *sanatoriy* ("health resort"), **планетарий** *planetariy* ("planetarium").

Of course there are some exceptions to this rule. For example the words **папа** *papa* ("father"), **дядя** *dyadya* ("uncle"), **дедушка** *dedushka* ("grandfather"), **слуга** *sluga* ("servant"), **судья** *sud'ya* ("judge"), **мужчина** *muzhchina* ("man"), **кофе** *kofe* ("coffee") etc. are of masculine gender despite their endings [ а ], [ я ], [ о ]. What do all these words have in common? They are related to humans, their occupations, professions and social roles.

**Feminine nouns** have the following endings:

1. - [ а ] For example: **книга** *kniga* ("book"), **полка** *polka* ("shelf"), **мама** *tata* ("mother").
2. - [ я ] For example: **семья** *sem'ya* ("family"), **комедия** *komediya* ("comedy").
3. - [ ь ] For example: **тетрадь** *tetrad'* ("notebook"), **ночь** *noch'* ("night"), **площадь** *ploshchad'* ("square"), **печь** *pech'* ("oven"), **мышь** *mysh'* ("mouse") **мать** *mat'* ("mother"), **дочь** *doch'* ("daughter"), **кровать** *krovat'* ("bed"), **вещь** *veshch'* ("thing"), **помощь** *pomoshch'* ("help").
4. - [ ия ] For example: **Италия** *Italiya* ("Italy").

You may be asking yourself the question, what is the difference between masculine nouns ending in [ ь ] and feminine nouns? If you take a closer look at feminine nouns, you will see that most of them end on a sibilant (Ж, Ш, Щ и Ч) + [ ь ].

**Neuter nouns** have the following endings:

1. - [ о ] For example: **золото** *zoloto* ("gold"), **яйцо** *yaytso* ("egg"), **кольцо** *kol'tso* ("ring").
2. - [ е ] For example: **поле** *pole* ("field"), **море** *more* ("sea"), **кафе** *kafe* ("cafe").
3. - [ ие ] For example: **общежитие** *obshchezhiye* ("dormitory").

There are ten words ending in - [мя] that belong to neuter gender: **бремя** *bremya* ("burden"), **время** *vremya* ("time"), **вымя** *vyuya* ("udder"), **имя** *imya* ("name"), **знамя** *znamya* ("banner"), **пламя** *plamyu* ("flame"), **племя** *plemya* ("tribe"), **семя** *semya* ("seed"), **стремя** *stremya* ("stirrup"), **темя** *temya* ("crown"), **дитя** *ditya* ("child"). You just need to remember these words as there are only ten of them.

All the above mentioned endings of nouns are also called "nominative case" nouns.

## Demonstrative Pronouns

---

In the dialogue, we had:

- Здравствуйте, можно посмотреть вон тот большой англо-русский словарь и вон ту книгу, автор А.П. Чехов?  
*Zdravstvuyte, možno posmotret' von tot bol'shoy anglo-russkiy slovar' i von tu knigu, avtor A.P. Chekhov?*  
 "Hello, can I have a look at that big English-Russian dictionary and that book by the author Anton Chekhov?"

In Russian, the main function of demonstrative pronouns is to determine and emphasize a certain object, its quality, quantity etc. among other objects. Demonstrative pronouns are usually put before a noun and should match in gender, number and case. See the table below to see how these are broken down.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Это ("This") <i>Etó</i>	<i>этот</i> <i>etot</i>	<i>эта</i> <i>eta</i>	<i>это</i> <i>eto</i>	<i>эти</i> <i>eti</i>
То ("That") <i>To</i>	<i>тот</i> <i>tot</i>	<i>та</i> <i>ta</i>	<i>то</i> <i>to</i>	<i>те</i> <i>te</i>

For example:

- Эта книга (*Eta kniga*), Та книга (*Ta kniga*)

"This book," "That book"

The word "**книга**" is a feminine noun, that's why we use **эта** (*eta*) and **та** (*ta*).

2. *Этот словарь (Etot slovar'), Тот словарь (Tot slovar').*

"This dictionary," "That dictionary"

The word "**словарь**" is a masculine noun, that's why we use **этот** (*etot*) and **тот** (*tot*).

3. *Это кафе (Eto kafe), То кафе (To kafe)*

"This cafe," "That cafe"

The word "**кафе**" is a neuter noun, which uses **это** (*chto*) and **то** (*to*).

Please pay attention to the following difference:

1. *Этот словарь хороший.*

*Etot slovar' khoroshiy.*

"This dictionary is good."

In this case we have a demonstrative pronoun that should correspond to the gender of the noun.

2. *Это словарь.*

*Eto slovar'.*

"This is a dictionary."

In this case we have the grammar structure "This is...," "This is not..." The word **это** should not be changed.

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Famous Russian Writers

---

Russian literature is rich in distinguished poets and famous writers. The names Mikhail Lermontov (Михаил Лермонтов), Alexander Pushkin (Александр Пушкин), Nikolay Nekrasov (Николай Некрасов), Fyodor Dostoevsky (Фёдор Достоевский), Anton Chekhov (Антон Чехов) are well-known not only in Russia, but all over the world. Anton Chekhov is



considered to be one of the greatest dramaturges in the world. It is interesting to note that his occupation was a doctor. His works are translated into more than 100 languages.

Furthermore, a lot of movies are based on his works: *The Cherry Orchard*, *Three Sisters*, *The Lady With the Dog*, *The Duel* and so on. Fyodor Dostoevsky is the author of a famous novel called *Crime and Punishment*, which is studied in all Russian schools. This novel has witnessed several English translations and a lot of film adaptations since 1923. Russians study Russian literature as well as foreign literature in school and they go on to read the works of famous American, French, English, as well as some Asian authors.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #3

# Let's go for a walk in Russia!

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# 3

# RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Алло! Лера, это ты?
2. ЛЕРА: Да. Привет, Алекс. Как дела?
3. АЛЕКС: Нормально. Слушай, ты что сейчас делаешь?
4. ЛЕРА: Ой, мне нужно приготовить поесть и убрать в комнате.
5. АЛЕКС: Лера, сегодня великолепная погода, голубое небо и теплый ветерок. Может погуляем?
6. ЛЕРА: Хм...Хорошая идея. Куда пойдём?
7. АЛЕКС: В ботанический сад.
8. ЛЕРА: С удовольствием!

# ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Allo! Lera, eto ty?
2. LERA: Da. Privet, Aleks. Kak dela?
3. ALEKS: Normal'no. Slushay, ty chto seychas delayesh'?
4. LERA: Oy, mne nuzhno prigotovit' poyest' i ubrat' v komnate.
5. ALEKS: Lera, segodnya velikolepnaya pogoda, yasnoye, goluboye nebo i teplyy veterok. Mozhet pogulyayem?

CONT'D OVER

6. LERA: Khm...Khoroshaya ideya. Kuda poydem?
7. ALEKS: V botanicheskiy sad.
8. ЛЕРА: S udovol'stviyem!

## ENGLISH

1. ALEX: Hello! Lera, is that you?
2. LERA: Yes. Hi, Alex. How are you?
3. ALEX: OK. Hey, what are you doing now?
4. LERA: Oh, I need to cook and clean the room.
5. ALEX: Lera, today it's wonderful weather, a blue sky and a warm breeze. Let's go for a walk?
6. LERA: Hmm... Good idea. Where shall we go?
7. ALEX: To the botanical garden.
8. LERA: With pleasure!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
великолепная	velikolepnaya	wonderful	adjective	feminine

сейчас	seychas	now; at the moment, just a moment	adverb	
погода	pogoda	weather	noun	feminine
голубое	goluboye	blue	adjective	neuter
небо	nebo	sky	noun	neutral
ветерок	veterok	breeze	noun	masculine
тёплый	teplyy	warm	adjective	masculine
приготовить поесть	prigotovit' poyest'	to cook a meal	phrase	
идея	ideya	idea	noun	feminine
убрать в комнате	ubrat' v komnate	to clean the room	phrase	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Какие великолепные фотографии! Чьи они?</b>  <i>Kakiye velikolepnyye fotografii! Ch'i oni?</i>          "Such wonderful photos! Whose are they?"</p>	<p><b>Я сейчас читаю книгу.</b>  <i>Ya seychas chitayu knigu.</i>          I am reading a book now.</p>
<p><b>Я сейчас не работаю.</b>  <i>Ya seychas ne rabotayu.</i>          "I don't work at the moment."</p>	<p><b>Ты сейчас занят?</b>  <i>Ty seychas zanyat?</i>          "Are you busy now?"</p>
<p><b>Я сейчас не могу разговаривать.</b>  <i>Ya seychas ne mogu razgovarivat'.</i>          "I can't talk now."</p>	<p><b>Какая сейчас погода?</b>  <i>Kakaya seychas pogoda?</i>          What is the weather now?</p>

<p><b>Погода ужасная.</b> <i>Pogoda uzhasnaya.</i></p> <p>"This weather is horrible."</p>	<p><b>Какая завтра будет погода?</b> <i>Kakaya zavtra budet pogoda?</i></p> <p>"What will the weather be like tomorrow?"</p>
<p><b>Погода сегодня не очень хорошая.</b> <i>Pogoda segodnya ne ochen' khoroshaya.</i></p> <p>"The weather is not very good today."</p>	<p><b>Мне нравится твоё голубое платье.</b> <i>Mne nravitsya tvoyo goluboye plat'ye.</i></p> <p>"I like your blue dress."</p>
<p><b>Какое голубое небо!</b> <i>Kakoye goluboye nebo!</i></p> <p>"What a blue sky!"</p>	<p><b>Вечером стало прохладнее и подул лёгкий ветерок.</b> <i>Veчерom stalo prokhladneye i podul lyogkiy veterok.</i></p> <p>"The evening became cooler and the light breeze blew."</p>
<p><b>Этот шарф тёплый?</b> <i>Etot sharf toplyy?</i></p> <p>"Is this scarf warm?"</p>	<p><b>Пироги тёплые.</b> <i>Pirogi tyoplyye.</i></p> <p>"The pies are warm."</p>
<p><b>Погода сегодня тёплая.</b> <i>Pogoda segodnya tyoplaya.</i></p> <p>"The weather is warm today."</p>	<p><b>Мама попросила меня приготовить поесть.</b> <i>Mama poprosila menya prigotovit' poyest'.</i></p> <p>"Mom asked me to cook a meal."</p>
<p><b>Поездка на Мальдивы? Сейчас? Великолепная идея!</b> <i>Poyezdka na Mal'divy? Seychas? Velikolepnaya ideya!</i></p> <p>"A trip to the Maldives? Now? Great idea!"</p>	<p><b>Хорошая идея, Анна!</b> <i>Khoroshaya ideya, Anna!</i></p> <p>"Good idea, Anna!"</p>
<p><b>Мне срочно нужно убрать в комнате.</b> <i>Mne srochno nuzhno ubrat' v komnate.</i></p> <p>"I urgently need to clean a room."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

The first key word for this lesson is the verb **убрать** (*ubrat*), which we came across in the phrase *убрать в комнате* (*ubrat' v komnate*), "to clean a room." This verb has several meanings.

The first meaning of this verb is "to clean up" or "to tidy up." The verb requires a prepositional case of a noun following it.

For example:

1. Ваня, убери у себя на столе.  
*Vanya, uberi u sebya na stole.*  
"Vanya, clean up your desk."
2. Мама попросила меня убрать в комнате.  
*Mama poprosila menya ubrat' v komnate.*  
"My mother asked me to clean the room."

The other meaning of this verb is "to take away" or "to remove." The verb requires an accusative case of a noun following it.

For example:

1. Уберите вашу машину с проезжей части.  
*Uberite vashu mashinu s proyezzhey chasti.*  
"Move your car away from the traffic area" (abandoned car).
2. Многие люди требуют убрать рекламу алкоголя и сигарет в транспорте.  
*Mnogiye lyudi trebuyut ubrat' reklamu alkogolya i sigaret v transporte.*  
"Many people are demanding the removal of alcohol and cigarette advertising in public transportation."

The last meaning of the word is "to kill somebody." You can find the verb used in this way in criminal or documentary movies, detective stories, articles, and so on. The verb requires an accusative case, which is applied to the noun following it.

For example:

1. Преступники решили убить директора завода.  
*Prestupniki reshili ubrat' direktora zavoda.*  
"The criminals decided to kill the director of the factory."

The second key word is the adjective *голубой* (*goluboy*), which means "blue." This adjective has two main meanings.

The first meaning is the color "blue." For example:

голубое небо - *goluboye nebo* - "blue sky"

голубое море - *goluboye more* - "blue sea"

голубое платье - *goluboye plat'ye* - "blue dress"

The second meaning of this word emerged in the 1980s, as it can also mean "gay." If someone says, *Он голубой* (*On goluboy*), which literally means, "He is blue," it means that he is gay. So please be careful when using the word *голубой* in expressions that are not related directly to color.

## GRAMMAR

**The Focus of this Lesson is the Genders of Adjectives.**

**Лера, сегодня великолепная погода, голубое небо и теплый ветерок.**

***Lera, segodnya velikolepnaya pogoda, goluboye nebo i teplyu veterok.***

**"Lera, today it's wonderful weather, a blue sky and a warm breeze. Let's go for a walk?"**

---

In Russian, adjectives also have one of three genders: masculine, feminine, or neuter. The form of an adjective (whether it is masculine, feminine, or neuter), depends on the noun which the adjective describes. As a rule, in the dictionary you can find the masculine singular form of an adjective. That's why knowing how to form feminine and neuter genders is very important.

Every adjective has a stem ending in a consonant plus an ending, which changes in relation to gender, case, or the noun number. For example, in the adjective **молодой** *molodoy* ("young"), **молод** *molod* is a stem ending in a consonant, **-ой** is the ending of masculine gender. By changing endings of an adjective, you can easily change its gender.

There are several very important rules which you have to remember in order to speak



Russian correctly.

There are three types of consonant stem endings:

**Hard consonant:** голубой *goluboy* ("blue"), молодой *molodoy* ("young"), новый *novyy* ("new").

**Soft consonant:** синий *siniy* ("dark blue"). Examples: of soft consonants: -н, or -ч, when we pronounce them softly.

**Consonants:** -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ч, -ш, -щ : хороший *khoroshiy* ("good"), лёгкий *lyogkiy* ("easy").

**Now let's have a closer look at masculine adjective endings.**

The adjectives ending in hard consonants will have the following endings.

**[-ый]** For example: тёплый *tyoplyy* ("warm").

**[-ой]** For example: молодой *molodoy* ("young").

Singular masculine adjectives ending in hard consonants have the unstressed ending **-ый** and the stressed ending **-ой**. For example: тёплый *tyoplyy* ("warm"), красивый *krasivyy* ("beautiful"), but please note: молодой *molodoy* ("young"), голубой *goluboy* ("blue").

Adjectives ending in soft consonants and -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ч, -ш, or -щ will have the following ending.

**[-ий]** For example: синий *siniy* ("blue"), маленький *malen'kiy* ("small"), свежий *svezhiy* ("fresh"), хороший *khoroshiy* ("good").

Please note that if the stem ends in -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ч, -ш, or -щ and the ending of an adjective is unstressed, the ending will be **[-ий]**. For example: свежий *svezhiy* ("fresh"), хороший *khoroshiy* ("good"). If the ending of an adjective is stressed, the ending will be **[-ой]**. For example: большой *bol'shoy* ("big"), чужой *chuzhoy* ("foreign").

**Next, feminine adjective endings.**

Adjectives ending in hard consonants or -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ч, -ш, or -щ will have the following ending.

**[-ая]** For example: тёплая *tyoplaya* ("warm"), молодая *molodaya* ("young"), хорошая *khoroshaya* ("good").

The adjectives ending in soft consonants will have the following ending:

**-[яя]** For example: *синяя sinaya* ("dark blue").

**And at last, let's take a look at neuter adjective endings.**

The adjectives ending in hard consonants and after **-г**, **-к**, or **-х** will have the following endings.

**-[ое]** For example: *голубое goluboye* ("blue"), *молодое molodoye* ("young").

The adjectives ending in **-ж**, **-ч**, **-ш**, or **-щ** with the stress on the stem will have the following ending:

**-[ее]** For example: *хорошее khorosheye* ("good"), *общее obshcheye* ("common").

If an adjective's stem ends in **-ж**, **-ч**, **-ш**, or **-щ** with the stress on the ending, the adjective in neuter gender will have the ending **-[ое]**. For example: *большое bol'shoye* ("big").

Tricky? Let's see how it works. Let's take an adjective and see how we can change its gender in accordance with the above mentioned rules. Let's take the adjective **новый novyy** ("new"), for example **новый дом novyy dom** ("a new house").

**Н О В Ы Й (NOVYY "new," masculine)**

Where does the stress go? The stress lies on the letter **О**, **Н О В Ы Й (NOVYY)**. It means that the ending in masculine gender will be **-[ый]**, not **-[ой]**. The stem ends in a hard consonant. Let's try to form a feminine gender. It will be **-Н О В А Я (NOVA YA)** for example, **новая квартира novaya kvartira** ("a new apartment"). We use the ending **[ая]** because the stem ends in a hard consonant. What about neuter? It will be **Н О В О Е (NOVO E)**, for example, **новое пальто novoye pal'to** ("a new coat"). We use the ending **[ое]** because the stem ends in a hard consonant.

**новый дом novyy dom** - "a new house"

**новая квартира novaya kvartira** - "a new apartment"

**новое пальто novoye pal'to** - "a new coat"

**С И Н И Й (SINIY - "blue," masculine)**

This adjective has a soft consonant **-н** at the end of its stem. That's why the ending in

masculine gender is [ий], not [ый] or [ой]. For example: **синий мяч** *siniy myach* ("a blue ball"). As the stem ends in a soft -н, the feminine gender will end in [ья], for example, **синяя птица** *sinyaya ptitsa* ("a blue bird") and neuter in [ее] **синее море** *sineye more* ("a blue sea").

синий мяч *siniy myach* - "a blue ball"

синяя птица *sinyaya ptitsa* - "a blue bird"

синее море *sineye more* - "a blue sea"

In our previous examples, we formed feminine and neuter genders from an adjective of masculine gender. Now let's try to do it in the opposite way. For example, you have the adjective:

### **БОЛЬШАЯ (BOL'SHAYA - "big," feminine)**

How can we form an adjective of masculine or neuter gender? Very easy! First, where is our stress? It is on the letter **А**, **БОЛЬШАЯ** (BOL'SHAYA). So masculine gender will be - **БОЛЬШОЙ** BOL'SHOY. Why so? Why not [ий]? Because even though the stem ends in -Ш, there is a stress on the ending. The neuter will be **БОЛЬШОЕ** BOL'SHOYE (stress on ending).

большой дом *bol'shoi dom* - "a big house"

большая квартира *bol'shaya kvartira* - "a big apartment"

большое озеро *bol'shoeye ozero* - "a big lake"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Seasons in Russia

---

Unlike many other countries, Russia has both cold and warm seasons. Because of Russia's vast territory, it is hard to give a general description of its climate, except to say that summer is warm and winter is cold, or very cold in some areas. For example, the average temperature in Moscow in summer is around between twenty-two and twenty-six degrees Celsius (between seventy-one and seventy-eight Fahrenheit), whereas in Saint Petersburg, the average temperature is twenty degrees Celsius (sixty-eight Fahrenheit). But of course, over

the past few years, Russia's climate has gradually been getting warmer. In 2012, Moscow reached its highest temperature of thirty-nine degrees Celsius (102 Fahrenheit). Moscow experiences some heavy snowfalls in winter, as well as a strong wind, called *buran*, or snowstorms. The coldest month is February, while the hottest month is July.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #4

## Is This Your Russian Family?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# 4

# RUSSIAN

1. ЛЕРА: Алекс, что это?
2. АЛЕКС: Это мой фотоальбом.
3. ЛЕРА: Можно посмотреть?
4. АЛЕКС: Конечно. Это мои фотографии. Вот мои родители. Рядом мой старший брат. Он-профессор и преподает в университете.
5. ЛЕРА: А это кто? Твои друзья?
6. АЛЕКС: Да. Они-врачи. А это моя младшая сестра.
7. ЛЕРА: Какая симпатичная. Она наверное модель?
8. АЛЕКС: Ха-ха, я передам ей твои слова. Нет. Она-юрист.

# ROMANIZATION

1. LERA: Aleks, chto eto?
2. ALEKS: Eto moy fotoal'bom.
3. LERA: Mozhno posmotret'?
4. ALEKS: Konechno. Eto moi fotografii. Vot moi roditeli. Ryadom moy starshiy brat. On-professor i prepodayet v universitete.
5. LERA: A eto kto? Tvoi druz'ya?

CONT'D OVER

6. ALEKS: Da. Oni-vrachi. A eto moya mladshaya sestra
7. LERA: Kakaya simpatichnaya. Ona naverno ye model'?
8. ALEKS: Kha-kha, ya peredam yey tvoi slova. Net. Ona-yurist.

## ENGLISH

1. LERA: Alex, what is this?
2. ALEX: This is my photo album.
3. LERA: Can I have a look?
4. ALEX: Of course. These are my pictures. Here are my parents. Next to them is my older brother. He is a professor and teaches at university.
5. LERA: And who are they? Are they your friends?
6. ALEX: Yes. They're doctors. And this is my younger sister.
7. LERA: She is so pretty. I'm guessing she's probably a model?
8. ALEX: Haha, I'll tell her you said so. No. She's a lawyer.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
фотоальбом	fotoal'bom	photo album	noun	masculine

фотографии	fotografii	photos	noun, plural	feminine
слова	slova	words	noun, plural	neuter
профессор	professor	professor	noun	masculine
передавать	peredavat'	to tell, to pass	verb	
преподавать	prepodavat'	to teach	verb	
юрист	yurist	lawyer	noun	masculine
симпатичная	simpatichnaya	pretty	adjective	feminine
рядом	ryadom	near, close	adverb	
друзья	druz'ya	friends	noun	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Какой симпатичный фотоальбом!</b>  <b>Может купим?</b>  <i>Kakoy simpatichnyy fotoal'bom! Mozhet kupim?</i>          "What a cute photo album! Let's buy it?"</p>	<p><b>Какие великолепные фотографии!</b>  <b>Чьи они?</b>  <i>Kakiye velikolepnyye fotografii! Ch'i oni?</i>          "Such wonderful photos! Whose are they?"</p>
<p><b>Что важнее: слова или поступки?</b>  <i>Chto vazhneye: slova ili postupki?</i>          "What's more important: the words or actions?"</p>	<p><b>Иван Васильевич - профессор МГУ (Московский государственный университет).</b>  <i>Ivan Vasil'yevich - professor MGU (Moskovskiy gosudarstvennyy universitet).</i>          "Ivan Vasil'yavich is a professor at MSU (Moscow State University)."</p>
<p><b>Передайте хлеб, пожалуйста.</b>  <i>Peredayte khleb, pozhaluysta.</i>          "Could you pass the bread please."</p>	<p><b>Он-профессор и преподаёт русский язык.</b>  <i>On-professor i prepodayot russkiy yazyk.</i>          "He is a professor and teaches Russian."</p>



<p><b>Сергей - юрист, он помогает людям.</b>  <i>Sergey - yurist, on pomogayet lyudyam.</i></p> <p>"Sergey is a lawyer, he helps people."</p>	<p><b>Я-юрист, а он-студент.</b>  <i>Ya-yurist, a on-student.</i></p> <p>"I'm a lawyer and he's a student."</p>
<p><b>Наталья симпатичная и общительная девушка.</b>  <i>Natal'ya simpatichnaya i obshchitel'naya devushka.</i></p> <p>"Natalia is a pretty and sociable girl."</p>	<p><b>Рядом с моим домом находится супермаркет.</b>  <i>Ryadom s moim domom nakhoditsya supermarket.</i></p> <p>"There is a supermarket near my house."</p>
<p><b>Садись рядом, тут свободно.</b>  <i>Sadis' ryadom, tut svobodno.</i></p> <p>"Sit near (me); it (seat) is free (not occupied)."</p>	<p><b>В трудную минуту мои друзья всегда рядом.</b>  <i>V trudnuyu minutu moi druz'ya vsegda ryadom.</i></p> <p>"My friends are always there (for me) during hard times. "</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

The first keyword of this lesson is **модель** *model* ("model"). It is a feminine noun. Many words in Russian have several different meanings.

The first meaning is "a model" (as in, the profession). It means a person who was employed to promote some commercial goods, be it clothes, cosmetics, or shampoo. The word *модель* *model* can be used for both men and women.

For example:

- Алина - модель Виктория Сикрет.  
*Alina - model Viktoriya Sikret.*  
 "Alina is a model for Victoria's Secret."
- Он давно работает моделью.  
*On davno rabotayet model'yu.*  
 "He works as a model for a long time."

Another meaning of this word is "pattern," "model / sample," or "maquette." Let me give you some examples.

1. У меня на столе стоит модель самолёта.  
*U menya na stole stoit model' samolota.*  
"I have a model airplane on my table."
2. В продажу поступила новая модель автомобиля Ниссан.  
*V prodazhu postupila novaya model' avtomobilya Nissan.*  
"A new Nissan car model is on sale."

The next key word is **передавать** *peredavat*, which is translated as "to tell" or "to pass." In our dialogue, we have its future tense - передам. This verb has plenty of meanings like "to transfer," "to pass," "to broadcast," "to take a message," "to convey," "to delegate," and so on. Today you will learn two main meanings.

The first meaning of this verb is "to pass" or "to hand" something from one person to another, from one person's hands to the other's.

For example:

1. Передайте хлеб, пожалуйста.  
*Peredayte khleb, pozhaluysta.*  
"Could you pass the bread please."
2. Я купила подарок для Инны, передай ей его пожалуйста.  
*Ya kupila podarok dlya Inny, pereday yey yego pozhaluysta.*  
"I bought a present for Inna. Could you give it to her please."

The second meaning is "to tell," "to take a message," or to transfer some information or news from one person to another.

1. Передавай Оксане от меня привет.  
*Peredavay Oksane ot menya privet.*  
"Tell Oksana hello from me."

2. Я передам ему твою информацию.  
*Ya peredam yemu tvoyu informatsiyu.*  
 "I will pass on your information to him."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of this Lesson is Plural Nouns.

**Конечно. Это мои фотографии. Вот мои родители. Рядом мой старший брат. Он профессор и преподает в университете.**

**"Of course. These are my pictures. Here are my parents. Next to them is my older brother. He is a professor and teaches at university."**

In this lesson, you will learn how to form plurals in the nominative case. To form plurals in English, it is enough just to add the letter "s," whereas in Russian, the grammar is not quite as straightforward. Instead of the letter "s," there are four types of endings to form plurals: **-Ы**, **-И**, **-А**, and **-Я**. There are several rules as to which one you should use.

**-Ы: This ending will have masculine and feminine nouns in the following instances.**

1. Masculine nouns, which end in a consonant in their singular form. Everything you need is just to add **-ы** to a consonant. For example:

Singular	Plural	Translation
<i>стол stol</i>	<i>столы stoly</i>	"table" / "tables"
<i>фотоальбом fotoal'bum</i>	<i>фотоальбомы fotoal'bomy</i>	"photo album" / "photo albums"
<i>юрист yurist</i>	<i>юристы yuristy</i>	"lawyer" / "lawyers"

2. Feminine nouns ending in **-а** in singular form. In this case, you have to remove the last letter **-а** from the singular form of the noun and add the ending **-ы**. For example:

Singular	Plural	Translation
<i>комната komnata</i>	<i>комнаты komnaty</i>	"room" / "rooms"

<i>газета gazeta</i>	<i>газеты gazety</i>	"newspaper" / "newspapers"
<i>квартира kvartira</i>	<i>квартиры kvartiry</i>	"apartment" / "apartments"

**-И: This ending will also have masculine and feminine nouns, when:**

1. In singular form, the masculine noun ends in **-Й, -Ь, or -ИЙ**. In this case, you have to remove the last letters **Й** and **Ь** and add the ending **-И** to the stem of a noun. For example:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<i>музей muzey</i>	<i>музеи muzei</i>	"museum" / "museums"
<i>словарь slovar'</i>	<i>словари slovari</i>	"dictionary" / "dictionaries"
<i>санаторий sanatoriy</i>	<i>санатории sanatorii</i>	"health resort" / "health resorts"
<i>конь kon'</i>	<i>кони koni</i>	"horse" / "horses"

2. In singular form, the feminine noun ends in **-Ь, -Я, or -ИЯ**. After removing the above-mentioned endings, please add the ending **-И** or **-ИЯ** to a stem. For example:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<i>тетрадь tetrad'</i>	<i>тетради tetradi</i>	"notebook" / "notebooks"
<i>ночь poch'</i>	<i>ночи nachi</i>	"night" / "nights"
<i>площадь ploshchad'</i>	<i>площади ploshchadi</i>	"square" / "squares"
<i>фотография fotografiya</i>	<i>фотографии fotografii</i>	"photo" / "photos"

3. In singular form, the masculine and feminine nouns have stems ending in **-Г, -К, -Х, -Ж, -Ч, -Ш, or -Щ**. If a noun ends in a consonant, you need to add the ending **-И** to the consonant. If a noun ends in a vowel, just please remove the vowel and add the ending **-И**. For example:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Translation</b>
-----------------	---------------	--------------------

<i>врач vrach</i>	<i>врачи vrachi</i>	"doctor" / "doctors"
<i>нож nozh</i>	<i>ножи nozhi</i>	"knife" / "knives"
<i>старуха starukha</i>	<i>старухи starukhi</i>	"old woman" / "old women"

**-А:** This ending will have neuter nouns and some masculine nouns which you just have to remember.

1. Neuter nouns which end in **-о** change their ending from **-о** to **-а**. For example:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<i>письмо pis'mo</i>	<i>письма pis'ma</i>	"letter" / "letters"
<i>окно okno</i>	<i>окна okna</i>	"window" / "windows"
<i>место mesto</i>	<i>места mesta</i>	"seat" / "seats"

2. Some masculine nouns which you just have to remember can have **-А** or **-Я** endings, for example:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<i>город gorod</i>	<i>города goroda</i>	"city" / "cities"
<i>дом dom</i>	<i>дома doma</i>	"house" / "houses"
<i>поезд poyezd</i>	<i>поезда poyezda</i>	"train" / "trains"
<i>профессор professor</i>	<i>профессора professora</i>	"professor" / "professors"
<i>номер номер</i>	<i>номера nomera</i>	"number" / "numbers"
<i>учитель uchitel'</i>	<i>учителя uchitelya</i>	"teacher" / "teachers"

In these words, the stress should be put on the ending.

**-Я: This ending will have neuter nouns.**

1. Neuter nouns ending in **-е** or **-ие** change their endings from **-е** or **-ие** to **-я** and **-ия** respectively. For example:

Singular	Plural	Translation
<i>поле pole</i>	<i>поля polya</i>	"field" / "fields"
<i>общежитие obshchezhiye</i>	<i>общежития obshtezhiya</i>	"dormitory" / "dormitories"
<i>море more</i>	<i>моря torya</i>	"sea" / "seas"

Let me give you some examples.

1. Я люблю музей.  
*Ya lyublyu muzey.*  
"I love the museum."
2. Я люблю музеи.  
*Ya lyublyu muzei.*  
"I love museums."
3. В Москве красивые дома.  
*V Moskve krasivyye doma.*  
"There are beautiful houses in Moscow."
4. У меня красивый дом.  
*U menya krasivyy dom.*  
"I have a beautiful house."

Some words in Russian may only have singular or plural forms. For example, деньги *den'gi* ("money"), часы *chasy* ("clock," "watch"), очки *ochki* ("glasses"), ножницы *nozhnitsy* ("scissors"), брюки *bryuki* ("trousers"), etc., are considered to be plural nouns that don't have a singular form. In contrast, nouns such as масло *maslo* ("butter"), любовь *lyubov'* ("love"), смелость *smelost'* ("courage"), ненависть *nenavist'* ("hate"), красота *krasota* ("beauty"), вода *voda* ("water"), молоко *moloko* ("milk"), etc., are only used in the singular as they don't have a plural form.

Please also remember that the word ребёнок *rebyonok* ("child") in the plural will be дети *deti* ("children") and the word человек *chelovek* ("human" or "man") will be люди *lyudi* ("people").

There are also some words that have special endings in the plural form, which are irregular plurals. These are:

друг *drug* - друзья *druz'ya* ("a friend" - "friends")

брат *brat* - братья *brat'ya* ("a brother" - "brothers")

сын *syn* - сыновья *synov'ya* ("a son" - "sons")

стул *stul* - стулья *stul'ya* ("a chair" - "chairs")

### Pronunciation Tip

---

Some consonants in Russian form pairs —a hard vs. soft pronunciation of the same letter. A soft consonant is one sound, just its pronunciation is a little bit softer than the pronunciation of a hard one.

For example: Б - Б' [b] - [b'], where Б [b] should be pronounced in the hard way and Б' [b'] in soft.

The following letters form pairs:

В - В' [v] - [v']

М - М' [m] - [m']

П - П' [p] - [p']

С - С' [s] - [s']

З - З' [z] - [z']

Р - Р' [r] - [r']

Л - Л' [l] - [l']

К - К' [k] - [k']

Г - Г' [g] - [g']

Х - Х' [kh] - [kh']

Н - Н' [n] - [n']

Т - Т' [t] - [t']

Д - Д' [d] - [d']

Ф - Ф' [f] - [f']

You can easily recognize the softness of consonants by looking at what letter follows this consonant. If after a consonant you have -А, -О, -Э, -У, or -Ы, the consonant should sound hard. If a consonant is followed by -Я, -Е, -Ё, -Ю, -И or -Ь, the consonant should sound soft. The difference between soft and hard pronunciation is essential because it can totally change the meaning of the word. For example, брат *brat* means "brother," whereas the word брать *brat'* means "to take." мат *mat* means "carpet," but мать *mat'* means "mother."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### The Importance of Family

---

Family in Russia is very important. From kindergarten, children are taught to respect parents and older people. The connection between parents and children is described in numerous proverbs and sayings. For example, a very famous proverb, Яблочко от яблоньки недалеко падает ("The apple doesn't fall far from the tree") means that children repeat and follow the way of thinking and lifestyle of their parents.

A woman plays a very important role in a Russian family. Wives not only have to uphold a high reputation, but they are considered to be the person who creates a safe and cozy home. Russian parents care and support their children long after the children reach adulthood. It is not rare for parents in their retirement age to financially support their children.



## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #5

## Dining In a Russian Restaurant

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 8 Grammar
- 14 Cultural Insight

# 5

## RUSSIAN

1. ОФИЦИАНТКА: Здравствуйте. Вы уже что-то выбрали?
2. АЛЕКС: Да. Скажите пожалуйста, сколько стоит картошка пюре и салат "Оливье"?
3. ОФИЦИАНТКА: Картошка стоит три евро, а салат "Оливье" - пять евро.
4. АЛЕКС: А у вас есть бизнес-ланч?
5. ОФИЦИАНТКА: Да. Он стоит пятнадцать евро.
6. АЛЕКС: Тогда, две большие порции пюре, один салат "Оливье" и две маленькие булочки. Они свежие?
7. ОФИЦИАНТКА: Конечно.

## ROMANIZATION

1. OFITSIANTKA: Zdravstvuyte. Vy uzhe chto-to vybrali?
2. ALEKS: Da. Skazhite pozhaluysta, skol'ko stoit kartoshka pyure i salat "Oliv'ye"?
3. OFITSIANTKA: Kartoshka stoit tri yevro, a salat "Oliv'ye" - pyat' yevro.
4. ALEKS: A u vas yes't' biznes-lanch?
5. OFITSIANTKA: Da. On stoit pyatnadsat' yevro.

CONT'D OVER

6. ALEKS: Togda, dve bol'shiye portsii pyure, odin salat "Oliv'ye" i dve malen'kiye bulochki. Oni svezhiye?

7. OFITSIANTKA: Konechno.

## ENGLISH

1. WAITRESS: Good afternoon. Have you already decided on something?

2. ALEX: Yes. Could you please tell me how much the mashed potatoes and 'Olivier' salad cost?

3. WAITRESS: Mashed potatoes cost three euros, and the 'Olivier' salad is five euros.

4. ALEX: And do you have a business lunch?

5. WAITRESS: Yes. It costs fifteen euros.

6. ALEX: Then, two big portions of mashed potatoes, one 'Olivier' salad, and two small buns. Are the buns fresh?

7. WAITRESS: Of course.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Скажите пожалуйста....?	Skazhite pozhaluysta...?	Could you please tell me... ?	phrase	

Сколько стоит...?	Skol'ko stoit...?	How much? (price) How much is....?	phrase	
картошка пюре	kartoshka pyure	mashed potatoes	phrase	
свежий	svezhiy	fresh	adjective	masculine
маленький	malen'kiy	small	adjective	masculine
три	tri	three	numeral	
один	odin	one	numeral	masculine
пять	pyat'	five (5)	numeral	
выбирать	vybirat'	choose, decide on	verb	
тогда	togda	then	adverb	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Скажите пожалуйста, как пройти в библиотеку?</b> <i>Skazhite pozhaluysta, kak proyti v biblioteku?</i></p> <p>Could you please tell me how to get to the library?</p>	<p><b>Сколько стоит эта шапка?</b> <i>Skol'ko stoit eta shapka?</i></p> <p>How much is this hat?</p>
<p><b>Сколько стоит виза?</b> <i>Skol'ko stoit viza?</i></p> <p>"How much is the visa?"</p>	<p><b>Сколько стоит эта машина?</b> <i>Skol'ko stoit eta mashina?</i></p> <p>"How much does the car cost?"</p>
<p><b>Моё любимое блюдо-картошка пюре.</b> <i>Moyo lyubimoye blyudo-kartoshka pyure.</i></p> <p>"My favorite dish is mashed potatoes."</p>	<p><b>Этот торт свежий?</b> <i>Etot tort svezhiy?</i></p> <p>Is this cake fresh?</p>

<p><b>Это свежая газета?</b> <i>Eto svezhaya gazeta?</i></p> <p>"Is it a fresh newspaper?"</p>	<p><b>У меня есть маленькая шоколадка, хочешь?</b> <i>U menya yest' malen'kaya shokoladka, khochesh'?</i></p> <p>"I have a small chocolate, want some?"</p>
<p><b>Этот пиджак слишком маленький.</b> <i>Etot pidzhak slishkom malen'kiy.</i></p> <p>"This jacket is too small."</p>	<p><b>Один бизнес-ланч и три кофе пожалуйста.</b> <i>Odin biznes-lanch i tri kofe pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>"One business lunch and three coffees please."</p>
<p><b>- У тебя есть девушка? -Нет, я сейчас один.</b> <i>U tebya yest' devushka? -Net, ya seychas odin.</i></p> <p>"- Do you have a girlfriend? -No, I'm single."</p>	<p><b>Один день.</b> <i>Odin den'.</i></p> <p>"For 1 day."</p>
<p><b>Пять плюс пять равно десять.</b> <i>Pyat' plyus pyat' ravno desyat'.</i></p> <p>"Five plus five equals ten."</p>	<p><b>Он провёл в аэропорту пять часов.</b> <i>On provyol v aeroportu pyat' chasov.</i></p> <p>"He spent five hours in the airport."</p>
<p><b>Мы выбрали поездку на Мальдивы.</b> <i>My vybrali poyezdku na Mal'divy.</i></p> <p>"We chose a trip to the Maldives."</p>	<p><b>Мужчина выбрал лампочку.</b> <i>Muzhchina vybral lampochku.</i></p> <p>"A man chose a light bulb."</p>
<p><b>Тогда я позвоню ему завтра.</b> <i>Togda ya pozvonyu yemu zavtra.</i></p> <p>"Then I will call him tomorrow."</p>	<p><b>Ты всё купил? Тогда пошли домой.</b> <i>Ty vsyo kupil? Togda poshli domoy.</i></p> <p>"Have you bought everything? Then let's go home."</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### тогда (*togda*)

The first key word for this lesson is **тогда** (*togda*), which we can translate as "then." This

word has two main meanings that you will come across in ordinary conversation as well as in books or newspapers. The first meaning is "in this case" or "under the circumstances or conditions." We can translate it as "then."

### For Example:

1. Иван опоздает, у него сейчас важное совещание.  
Тогда я пойду, не буду ждать.  
*Ivan opozdayet, u nego seychas vazhnoye soveshchaniye.*  
*Togda ya пойду, ne budu zhdat.*  
"Ivan will be late; he has an important meeting now."  
"Then, I'll go; I will not wait (for him)."

In the last sentence, the word "then" carries the meaning "in this case": "In this case, I will go; I will not wait."

1. Ты что-то хочешь?  
Нет.  
Тогда я куплю себе мороженое.  
*Ty chto-to khochesh'?*  
*Net.*  
*Togda ya kuplyu sebe morozhenoye.*  
"Do you want something?"  
"No."  
"Then I will buy ice cream for myself."

The second meaning of this word is "at that time" or "not now." It answers the question Когда?, meaning "When?"

### For Example:

1. Это фотография твоей бабушки. Тогда она еще была молодой.  
*Eto fotografiya tvoyey babushki. Togda ona yeshche byla molodoy.*  
"This is a picture of your grandmother. At that time, she was still young."

2. Тогда это было поле, а сейчас, жилой квартал.  
Togda eto bylo pole, a seychas, zhiloy kvartal.  
"At that time it was a field, and now, a residential area."

In both examples, the word **тогда** (*togda*) means that the situation was in the past but does not exist now: the grandmother is not young, and the field is not a field any more.

### **свежий (svezhiy)**

The next word for this lesson is the adjective **свежий** (*svezhiy*), which we can translate as "fresh." This word has several meanings. Please see the following examples.

#### **For Example:**

1. У вас есть свежий номер журнала "Здоровье"?  
*U vas yest' svezhiy nomer zhurnala "Zdorov'ye"?*  
"Do you have the latest edition of the journal 'Health'?"
2. В этой газете всегда самые свежие новости.  
*V etoy gazete vsegda samyye svezhiye novosti.*  
"You can always find the latest news in this newspaper."

In this case, the word **свежий** (*svezhiy*) means "new" or "the latest."

Another meaning of this word is "fresh."

#### **For Example:**

1. Он любит свежий апельсиновый сок.  
*On lyubit svezhiy apel'sinoy sok.*  
"He likes fresh orange juice."
2. Японцы едят свежую рыбу.  
*Yapontsy yedyat svezhuuyu rybu.*  
"Japanese people eat fresh fish."

When talking about weather or wind, the word **свежий** (*svezhiy*) can also have the meaning

of "cool." We often use it in the expression **На улице свежо** (*Na ulitse svezho*), meaning "It is cool (chilly) outside."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson Is the Plural Form of Adjectives.

**Тогда, две большие порции пюре, один салат "Оливье" и две маленькие булочки. Они свежие?**

*Togda, dve bol'shiye portsii pyure, odin salat "Oliv'ye" i dve malen'kiye bulochki. Oni svezhiye?*

**"Then, two big portions of mashed potatoes, one 'Olivier' salad, and two small buns. Are the buns fresh?"**

---

As you learned from our previous lessons, adjectives in Russian should agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns they describe. This means that an adjective describing a noun must have the same gender (masculine/feminine/neuter) and match the noun's number (singular/plural).

#### For Example:

1. **Большой дом** (*bol'shoy dom*), meaning "a big house," but **большие дома** (*bol'shiye doma*), meaning "big houses"

As you can see from this example, the word **дома** (*doma*), meaning "houses," is in the plural form; therefore, the adjective **большой** (*bol'shoy*), meaning "big," should be also plural. It is incorrect to say "большой дома" (*bol'shoy doma*) because the adjective has a singular form, whereas the noun is plural.

There are two rules on how to form the plural form of adjectives in Russian. We can apply these rules to all three genders. Now, let's take a closer look at these two rules.

**1) The adjectives of all three genders with a stem that ends in a hard consonant will have the ending -ые. All you need to do is remove the singular ending and add the ending -ые.**

#### For Example:

---

Gender	Singular	Plural	"English"
--------	----------	--------	-----------

---



Masculine	<b>тёплый</b> <i>tyoplyy</i>	<b>тёплые</b> <i>tyoplyye</i>	"warm"
Masculine	<b>новый</b> <i>novyy</i>	<b>новые</b> <i>novyye</i>	"new"
Feminine	<b>тёплая</b> <i>tyoplaya</i>	<b>тёплые</b> <i>tyoplyye</i>	"warm"
Feminine	<b>новая</b> <i>novaya</i>	<b>новые</b> <i>novyye</i>	"new"
Neuter	<b>тёплое</b> <i>tyoploye</i>	<b>тёплые</b> <i>tyoplyye</i>	"warm"
	<b>новое</b> <i>novoye</i>	<b>новые</b> <i>novyye</i>	"new"

As you can see, regardless of gender, the ending of an adjective in plural form will be the same for all three genders **-ые**.

The grammar structure looks like this:

*НОВЫЙ NOVYY - ЫЙ YY = НОВ NOV*

*НОВ NOV +ЫЕ YYE = НОВЫЕ NOVYYE*

Adjective - ending of singular form + ending of plural form

### For Example:

1. *Этот салат вкусный.*  
*Etot salat vkusnyy.*  
"This salad is tasty."

The word "salad" is a masculine noun because it ends in a consonant; therefore, the adjective *вкусный* (*vkusnyy*) also has a masculine gender with the ending **-ЫЙ**.

Now, let's form a plural.

**For Example:**

1. Эти салаты *вкусные*.  
*Eti salaty vkusnyye.*  
"These salads are tasty."

In this sentence, we used the noun in the plural; therefore, we should also use the plural form of the adjective.

**For Example:**

1. Эта книга *новая*.  
*Eta kniga novaya.*  
"This book is new."

To form a plural form of the adjective *новая* (*novaya*), you should drop the ending **-ая** first and add the ending **-ые**.

**For Example:**

1. Эти книги *новые*.  
*Eti knigi novyye.*  
"These books are new."
2. Это поле *зелёное*.  
*Eto pole zelyonoye.*  
"This field is green."

To form the plural, change the ending from **-ое** to **-ые**.

**For Example:**

1. Эти поля *зелёные*.  
*Eti polya zelyonyye.*  
"These fields are green."

2) The adjectives of which the stems end in soft consonants and -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ч, -ш, and -щ will have the -ие ending. The grammar structure is the same as was described.

For Example:

Gender	Singular	Plural	"English"
Masculine	<b>синий</b> <i>siniy</i>	<b>синие</b> <i>siniye</i>	"blue"
Masculine	<b>свежий</b> <i>svezhiy</i>	<b>свежие</b> <i>svezhiye</i>	"fresh"
Masculine	<b>хороший</b> <i>khoroshiy</i>	<b>хорошие</b> <i>khoroshiye</i>	"good"
Feminine	<b>синяя</b> <i>sinyaya</i>	<b>синие</b> <i>siniye</i>	"blue"
Feminine	<b>свежая</b> <i>svezhaya</i>	<b>свежие</b> <i>svezhiye</i>	"fresh"
Feminine	<b>хорошая</b> <i>khoroshaya</i>	<b>хорошие</b> <i>khoroshiye</i>	"good"
Neuter	<b>синее</b> <i>sineye</i>	<b>синие</b> <i>siniye</i>	"blue"
Neuter	<b>свежее</b> <i>svezheye</i>	<b>свежие</b> <i>svezhiye</i>	"fresh"
Neuter	<b>хорошее</b> <i>khorosheye</i>	<b>хорошие</b> <i>khoroshiye</i>	"good"

After the consonants -ж and -ш, we pronounce the ending -ие as -ые, even though we write it as -ие.

Let's have more examples.

## For Example:

1. Я не люблю жаркие страны (жаркий - жаркие).  
*Ya ne lyublyu zharkiye strany (zharkiy - zharkiye).*  
"I do not like hot countries."
2. Я люблю документальные фильмы (документальный-документальные).  
*Ya lyublyu dokumental'nyye fil'my (dokumental'nyy-dokumental'nyye).*  
"I like documentaries."
3. В России есть красивые озёра и высокие горы (красивый - красивые, высокий - высокие).  
*V Rossii yest' krasivyye ozora i vysokiye gory (krasivyy - krasivyye, vysokiy - vysokiye).*  
"There are beautiful lakes and high mountains in Russia."
4. Эти булочки свежие (свежий - свежие)?  
*Eti bulochki svezhiye (svezhiy - svezhiye)?*  
"Are these buns fresh?"
5. У неё синие глаза. (глаз - глаза).  
*U neyo siniye glaza. (glaz - glaza).*  
"She has blue eyes."

## Language Tip

---

There are four types of numbers in Russian: cardinal numbers, ordinal numbers, collective numbers, and fractional numbers. This lesson will cover cardinal numbers.

We use cardinal numbers to express an order in counting or quantity of something. The main question of cardinal numbers is *Сколько?* meaning "How much?" Cardinal numbers should agree in case with related nouns but don't have genders (except one and two) and numbers (except one).

Let's take a look at the table (underlined letters are stressed letters).

---

<b>Number</b>	<b>Russian</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
---------------	----------------	---------------------	------------------

---

1	ОДИН	<i>odin</i>	"one" (masculine)
1	ОДНА	<i>odna</i>	"one" (feminine)
1	ОДНО	<i>odno</i>	"one" (neuter)
1	ОДНИ	<i>odni</i>	"one" (plural)
2	<b>ДВА</b>	<i>dva</i>	"two" (masculine)
2	<b>ДВЕ</b>	<i>dve</i>	"two" (feminine)
3	ТРИ	<i>tri</i>	"three"
4	ЧЕТЫРЕ	<i>chetyre</i>	"four"
5	ПЯТЬ	<i>pyat'</i>	"five"
6	ШЕСТЬ	<i>shest'</i>	"six"
7	СЕМЬ	<i>sem'</i>	"seven"
8	ВОСЕМЬ	<i>vosem'</i>	"eight"
9	ДЕВЯТЬ	<i>devyat'</i>	"nine"
10	ДЕСЯТЬ	<i>desyat'</i>	"ten"

### For Example:

#### 1. ОДНО ПАЛЬТО

*odno pal'to*

"one coat"

The word "coat" is neuter; therefore, "one" is neuter too.

## **2. одна чашка**

*odna chashka*

"one cup"

The word "cup" is feminine; therefore, the numeral "one" is also feminine.

## **3. один рубль**

*odin rubl'*

"one rouble"

The word "rouble" has masculine gender; therefore, "one" is also masculine.

## **4. одни очки**

*odni ochki*

"glasses"

As you know, the word glasses is always presented in the plural form in Russian, and that is true even if there is only one of them.

## **5. две картошки**

*dve kartoshki*

"two potatoes"

The word картошка is feminine.

## **6. четыре машины**

*chetyre mashiny*

"four cars"

## **7. У меня четыре машины, два дома, одна дача и три сына. Я счастливый человек!**

*U menya chetyre mashiny, dva doma, odna dacha i tri syna. Ya schastlivyy chelovek!*

"I have four cars, two houses, one cottage, and three sons. I am a happy man!"

Please note that we put nouns following the numerals from five to ten into the genitive case. We will explain this grammar in the upcoming lessons.

## **CULTURAL INSIGHT**

## There's Something for Everyone in Russian Cuisine

---

Many people think that Russian cuisine is one of the most diverse cuisines in the world. Indeed, due to Russia's large territory, it includes national dishes of many local people. Russian cuisine has a variety of hot and cold soups such as *ukha* ("fish soup"), *rassolnik* (based on salty-sour cucumbers), and *okroshka* (a cold soup based on kvass or kefir). One of the most popular is *shchi* ("cabbage soup"), which has been around for approximately 1,000 years and goes well with *smetana*. *Shchi* was a famous dish among both the rich and the poor. Other famous dishes include *pelmeni*, *bliny*, and *shashlyky*. *Shashlyky* are prepared with marinated lamb, chicken, pork, or beef. The meat should be grilled on skewers. *Shashlyky* is usually cooked by men, and all males notoriously have their own secret way of cooking to make the meat as tender and delicious as possible. *Shashlyky* are so popular in Russia that it has become tradition to cook them outdoors during Russia's May holiday week.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #6

## Traveling By Train in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 14 Cultural Insight

# 6



# RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Добрый день. Это железнодорожный вокзал?
2. СПРАВОЧНАЯ: Добрый день. Да.
3. АЛЕКС: Вы не подскажите, пожалуйста, во сколько прибывает поезд «Киев-Москва»?
4. СПРАВОЧНАЯ: Есть два поезда. Поезд номер семьдесят шесть «Киев-Москва» прибывает в пятнадцать тридцать на первый путь, а поезд номер девяносто шесть прибывает в девятнадцать сорок пять, на седьмой путь.
5. АЛЕКС: Большое спасибо.

# ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Dobryy den'. Eto zheleznodorozhnyy vokzal?
2. SPRAVOCHNAY A: Dobryy den'. Da.
3. ALEKS: Vy ne podskazhite, pozhaluysta, vo skol'ko pribyvayet poyezd «Kiyev-Moskva»?
4. SPRAVOCHNAY A: Yest' dva poyezda. Poyezd nomer sem'desyat shest' «Kiyev-Moskva» pribyvayet v pyatnadtsat' tridtsat' na pervyy put', a poyezd nomer devyanosto shest' pribyvayet v devyatnadtsat' sorok pyat', na sed'moy put'.

CONT'D OVER

5. ALEKS: Bol'shoye spasibo.

## ENGLISH

1. ALEX: Good afternoon. Is this the train station?

2. INFORMATION  
DESK: Good afternoon. Yes.

3. ALEX: Could you please tell me what time the "Kiev-Moscow" train will arrive?

4. INFORMATION  
DESK: There are two trains. Train 76 "Kiev-Moscow" arrives at three-thirty at platform 1, and train 96 arrives at seven-forty-five on platform 7.

5. ALEX: Thank you very much.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
седьмой	sed'moy	seventh	numeral	masculine
первый	pervyy	first	numeral	masculine
девяносто шесть	devyanosto shest'	ninety-six	numeral	
семьдесят шесть	sem'desyat shest'	seventy-six	numeral	masculine
путь	put'	platform, way, road	noun	masculine

Вы не подскажите, пожалуйста...?	Vy ne podskazhite, pozhaluysta...?	Could you please tell me ?	question phrase	
железнодорожный вокзал	zheleznodorozhnyy vokzal	railway station, train station	noun phrase	masculine
поезд	poezd	train	noun	masculine
во сколько	vo skol'ko	at what time	phrase	
прибывать	pribyvat'	to arrive	verb	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Он пришел к финишу седьмым.</b> <i>On prishel k finishu sed'mym.</i></p> <p>"He finished seventh."</p>	<p><b>Я первый раз в Японии.</b> <i>Ya pervyy raz v Yaponii.</i></p> <p>"This is my first time in Japan."</p>
<p><b>По результатам лотереи победил номер девяносто шесть.</b> <i>Po rezul'tatam loterei pobedil nomer devyanosto shest'.</i></p> <p>"According to the lottery results, number 96 won."</p>	<p><b>Мне нужно набрать семьдесят шесть баллов, чтобы сдать этот экзамен.</b> <i>Mne nuzhno nabrat' sem'desyat shest' ballov, chtoby sdat' etot ekzamen.</i></p> <p>"I need to get seventy six points to pass this exam."</p>
<p><b>Поезд Киев-Москва прибывает на второй путь.</b> <i>Poyezd Kiyev-Moskva pribyvayet na vtoroy put'.</i></p> <p>"The "Kiev-Moscow" train arrives on platform 2."</p>	<p><b>Вы не подскажите, пожалуйста, где находится железнодорожный вокзал?</b> <i>Vy ne podskazhite, pozhaluysta, gde nakhoditsya zheleznodorozhnyy vokzal?</i></p> <p>"Could you please tell me, where is the railway station?"</p>

<p><b>Витебский вокзал - первый железнодорожный вокзал в России.</b>  <i>Vitebskiy vokzal - pervyy zheleznodorozhnyy vokzal v Rossii.</i></p> <p>"Vitebskiy station is Russia's first railway station."</p>	<p><b>Мне нужно купить билет на поезд.</b>  <i>Mne nuzhno kupit' билет na poyezd.</i></p> <p>"I need to buy a train ticket."</p>
<p><b>Отправление поезда задерживается на 20 минут.</b>  <i>Otpravleniye poyezda zaderzhivayetsya na 20 minut.</i></p> <p>"The train departure will be delayed for 20 minutes."</p>	<p><b>Во сколько ты придёшь?</b>  <i>Vo skol'ko ty pridyosh'?</i></p> <p>What time will you come?</p>
<p><b>Во сколько ты заканчиваешь работу?</b>  <i>Vo skol'ko ty zakanchivayesh' rabotu?</i></p> <p>"What time do you finish your work?"</p>	<p><b>Во сколько открываются банки?</b>  <i>Vo skol'ko otkryvayutsya banki?</i></p> <p>"What time do the banks open?"</p>
<p><b>Во сколько мы сможем встретиться?</b>  <i>Vo skol'ko my smozhem vstretit'sya?</i></p> <p>"What time can we meet?"</p>	<p><b>Самолёт прибывает в аэропорт "Шереметьево".</b>  <i>Samolyot pribyvayet v aeroport "Sheremet'yevo".</i></p> <p>"The plane arrives at the airport "Sheremet'yevo"."</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### путь (*put'*)

The first key word for this lesson is **путь** (*put'*). It is a masculine noun. When talking about railway stations and trains, we can translate this word as "platform." In this meaning, we only use the word **путь** (*put'*) in the announcements about departure or train arrivals or other issues connected to trains.

### For Example:

1. Поезд Киев-Москва прибывает на второй *путь*.  
*Poyezd Kiyev-Moskva pribyvayet na vtoroy put'.*  
"The "Kiev-Moscow" train arrives on platform two."
2. Поезд Владивосток-Москва отправляется с третьего *пути*.  
*Poyezd Vladivostok-Moskva otpravlyayetsya s tret'yego puti.*  
"The Vladivostok-Moscow train departs from platform three."

Another meaning for this word is a road, path, or direction that you take in order to get to a particular place. It can have both a direct and an indirect meaning.

### For Example:

1. Русская поговорка: "Путь к сердцу мужчины лежит через его желудок."  
*Russkaya pogovorka: "Put' k serdtsu muzhchiny lezhit cherez yego zheludok."*  
"A Russian saying: 'The way to a man's heart is through his stomach.'"
2. Путь домой лежал через *лес*.  
*Put' domoy lezhal cherez les.*  
"The road home was through the forest."
3. Он на пути в *Москву*.  
*On na puti v Moskvu.*  
"He is on the way to Moscow."

The next meaning is a way or a method to achieve something. Please note that in this case, that we often use the word **путь** (*put'*) in the plural: **пути развития** (*puti razvitiya*), meaning "the ways of developing," and **пути выхода** (*puti vykhoda*), meaning "the ways out of," etc.

### For Example:

1. Компания ищет пути выхода из *кризиса*.  
*Kompaniya ishchet puti vykhoda iz krizisa.*  
"The company is looking for ways out of the crisis."

**Вы не подскажите пожалуйста (Vy ne podskazhite pozhaluysta)**

The next key phrase is **Вы не подскажите пожалуйста** (*Vy ne podskazhite pozhaluysta*), which we can translate as "Could you tell me please?"

The pronoun **вы** (*vy*) means "you." We can translate **не** (*ne*) as the expression "couldn't." The verb **подсказать** (*podskazat'*) literally means "to give a cue" or "to prompt," while **пожалуйста** (*pozhaluysta*) means "please." So this phrase literally means "Couldn't you give a cue, please?" We use this phrase when we want to ask someone in a very polite way to give you some information about direction, location, or the price.

### For Example:

1. **Вы не подскажите пожалуйста где находится вокзал?**  
"Could you please tell me where the railway station is situated?"
2. **Вы не подскажите пожалуйста сколько стоит эта книга.**  
"Could you please tell me how much this book costs?"

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson Is Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers.

**Поезд номер семьдесят шесть "Киев-Москва" прибывает в пятнадцать тридцать на первый путь, а поезд номер девяносто шесть прибывает в девятнадцать сорок пять, на седьмой путь.**

***Poyezd nomer sem'desyat shest' "Kiyev-Moskva" pribyvayet v pyatnadtsat' tridtsat' na pervuyu put', a poyezd nomer devyanosto shest' pribyvayet v devyatnadtsat' sorok pyat', na sed'moy put'.***

**"The 76 train arrives at three-thirty on platform 1, and train 96 arrives at seven-forty-five on platform seven."**

---

In our previous lesson, we started studying Russian numerals, including cardinal numbers from one to ten. This lesson will cover the numbers eleven and up.

There are several rules for forming cardinal numerals in Russian.

### Rule 1

---

We form the numbers from eleven to nineteen in two parts: a number from one to nine plus

the suffix -надцать (-nadtsat).

Let's take a closer look:

<b>Number</b>	<b>Russian</b>	<b>Romanization</b>
11	одиннадцать	<i>odinnadtsat'</i>
12	двенадцать	<i>dvenadtsat'</i>
13	тринадцать	<i>trinadtsat'</i>
14	четырнадцать	<i>chetyrnadtsat'</i>
15	пятнадцать	<i>pyatnadtsat'</i>
16	шестнадцать	<i>shestnadtsat'</i>
17	семнадцать	<i>semnadtsat'</i>
18	восемнадцать	<i>vosemnadtsat'</i>
19	девятнадцать	<i>devyatnadtsat'</i>

As you can see, the first part of the above-mentioned numerals are numerals from one to nine:

<b>Number</b>	<b>Russian</b>	<b>Romanization</b>
1	один	<i>odin</i>
2	два	<i>dva</i>
3	три	<i>tri</i>
4	четыре	<i>chetyre</i>
5	пять	<i>pyat'</i>
6	шесть	<i>shest'</i>

7	семь	<i>sem'</i>
8	восемь	<i>vosem'</i>
9	девять	<i>devyat'</i>

The only difference is that we use these numbers without their endings **-ь** and **-е**.

### For Example:

1. **шесть** (*shest'*), meaning "six," compared to **шестнадцать** (*shestnadtsat'*), meaning "sixteen" (with no **-ь** between the letters **-т** and **-н**)
2. **четыре** (*chetyre*), meaning "four," compared to **четырнадцать** (*chetyrnadtsat'*), meaning "fourteen" (with no **-е** between the letters **-р** and **-н**)

Historically, the suffix **-надцать** (*-nadtsat'*) had two parts: **-на** (*-na*), which means "on," and **-дцать** (*-dtsat'*), which had a meaning of "ten" in old Russian. Therefore, **пятнадцать** (*pyatnadtsat'*), meaning "fifteen," literally means "five-on-ten," and **тринадцать** (*trinadtsat'*), meaning "thirteen," literally means "three-on-ten."

In the word **одиннадцать** (*odinnadtsat'*), meaning "eleven," you can see a double **-нн**. This is because one letter, **-н**, was taken from **один**, meaning "one," and another one from **-надцать** (*-nadtsat'*): **один** (*odin*) and **надцать** (*nadtsat'*) = **одиннадцать** (*odinnadtsat'*).

### For Example:

1. Мой билет - номер **одиннадцать**.  
*Moy bilet - nomer odinnadtsat'*.  
"My ticket is number eleven."
2. Эта игрушка стоит **восемнадцать евро**.  
*Eta igrushka stoit vosemnadtsat' yevro*.  
"This toy costs eighteen euros."
3. Поезд прибывает в **десять пятнадцать**.  
*Poyezd pribyvayet v desyat' pyatnadtsat'*.  
"The train arrives at ten-fifteen."



## Rule 2

---

The cardinal numbers "twenty," **двадцать** (*dvadtsat*), and "thirty," **тридцать** (*tridtsat*), are derived from two elements:

**два** (*dva*), meaning "two" + the suffix **дцать** (*dtsat*): that is, "two tens"

**три** (*tri*), meaning "three" + the suffix **дцать** (*dtsat*): that is, "three tens"

### For Example:

1. Это стоит двадцать евро.  
*Eto stoit dvadtsat' yevro.*  
"It costs twenty euros."
2. Ему тридцать лет.  
*Yemu tridtsat' let.*  
"He is thirty years old."

## Rule 3

---

The cardinal numbers fifty, sixty, seventy, and eighty consist of two parts: a number from one to nine + suffix **-десят** (*desyat*), which means "ten" in Russian.

Number	Russian	Romanization
40	сорок	<i>sorok</i>
50	пятьдесят	<i>pyat'desyat</i>
60	шестьдесят	<i>shest'desyat</i>
70	семьдесят	<i>sem'desyat</i>
80	восемьдесят	<i>vosem'desyat</i>
90	девяносто	<i>devyanosto</i>

As you can see from the table, the exceptions to the rule are numbers forty and ninety.

Please remember, that the numbers fifty, sixty, seventy, and eighty all have the soft **-ь** in the middle of the word: **пятьдесят** (*pyat'desyat*), meaning "fifty"; **шестьдесят** (*shest'desyat*), meaning "sixty"; **семьдесят** (*sem'desyat*), meaning "seventy"; and **восемьдесят** (*vosem'desyat*), meaning "eighty."

#### Rule 4

---

We form compound numbers from twenty-one to twenty-nine, from thirty-one to thirty-nine, etc. by two words that we write separately.

#### For Example:

1. двадцать два (*dvadtsat' dva*), meaning "twenty-two"
2. сорок шесть (*sorok shest'*), meaning "forty-six"
3. восемьдесят один (*vosem'desyat odin*), meaning "eighty-one," etc.

#### For Example:

1. В этом классе двадцать два ученика.  
*V etom klasse dvadtsat' dva uchenika.*  
"There are twenty-two students in this class."
2. Мне тридцать один год.  
*Mne tridtsat' odin god.*  
"I am thirty-one years old."
3. Рейс компании "Аэрофлот" номер SU 53 прибывает двадцать первого августа в десять часов утра.  
*Reys kompanii "Aeroflot" nomer SU 53 pribyvayet dvadtsat' pervogo avgusta v desyat chasov utra.*  
"The 'Aeroflot' flight SU 53 arrives on August twenty-first at ten a.m."

#### Rule 5

The hundreds (200, 300, 400, etc.) are made up of two parts: a number from one to nine (including the soft consonant -ь and -е) + **сто** (*sto*), meaning "hundred" expressed in the appropriate case and number.

<b>Cardinal Number</b>	<b>Russian</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Formation</b>	<b>Case</b>
100	СТО	<i>sto</i>		Exception (case ending not applied)
200	ДВЕСТИ	<i>dvesti</i>	<i>две</i> ( <i>dve</i> ), meaning "two" + <i>сти</i> ( <i>sti</i> ) old form of "hundred"	Old Russian (case not applicable)
300	ТРИСТА	<i>trista</i>	<i>три</i> ( <i>tri</i> ), meaning "three" + <i>ста</i> ( <i>sta</i> ), meaning "hundred"	Genitive (singular)
400	ЧЕТЫРЕСТА	<i>chetyresta</i>	<i>четыре</i> ( <i>chetyre</i> ), meaning "four" + <i>ста</i> ( <i>sta</i> ), meaning "hundred"	Genitive (singular)
500	ПЯТЬСОТ	<i>pyat'sot</i>	<i>пять</i> ( <i>pyat</i> ), meaning "five" + <i>сот</i> ( <i>sot</i> ), meaning "hundred"	Genitive (singular)

600	ШЕСТЬСОТ	<i>shest'sot</i>	<i>ШЕСТЬ (shest')</i> , meaning "six" + <i>СОТ (sot)</i> , meaning "hundred"	Genitive (singular)
700	СЕМЬСОТ	<i>sem'sot</i>	<i>СЕМЬ (sem)</i> , meaning "seven" + <i>СОТ (sot)</i> , meaning "hundred"	Genitive (singular)
800	ВОСЕМЬСОТ	<i>vosem'sot</i>	<i>ВОСЕМЬ (vosem)</i> , meaning "eight" + <i>СОТ (sot)</i> , meaning "hundred"	Genitive (singular)
900	ДЕВЯТЬСОТ	<i>devyat'sot</i>	<i>ДЕВЯТЬ (devyat')</i> , meaning "nine" + <i>СОТ (sot)</i> , meaning "hundred"	Genitive (singular)

### For Example:

1. Этот телевизор стоит сто евро.  
*Etot televizor stoit sto yevro.*  
"This TV costs one hundred euros."
2. Я не могу купить часы за триста долларов, это очень дорого.  
*Ya ne mogu kupit' chasy za trista dollarov, eto ochen' dorogo.*  
"I cannot buy a watch for three hundred dollars, it's very expensive."

3. Києву більше 900 лет.  
*Kiyevu boleye 900 let.*  
"Kiev is more than 900 years old."

### Language Tip

---

Have you ever heard of a palindrome, a word or phrase for which the meaning doesn't change, regardless of whether we read it forward or backward? There are plenty of them in Russian. One of the most famous is *А роза упала на лапу Азора* (*A roza upala na lapu Azora*), meaning "A rose fell on the Azor's paw."

Here is another palindrome.

#### For Example:

1. Дом мод  
*dom mod*  
"fashion house"

The meaning of this sentence and its pronunciation will not change if you will read it in reverse.

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Traveling Russia by Train

---

Did you know that the longest train route in the world is Moscow-Vladivostok? It actually takes about six days to get to the end destination. There are different kinds of trains in Russia, such as high-speed daytime trains or overnight sleeper trains. Train fares are not as expensive as air tickets: you can either buy them online or at a ticket office at the railway station. An ordinary train has three types of cars: a kind of couchette car, called a "platzkart," *плацкарт* (*platskart*); a coupe car; and a SV car. The platzkart is the cheapest one, as it has no wall between compartments and the corridor and thus is not private. Coupe cars are more comfortable, as the compartments are separated from the corridor and therefore are more

expensive. The most expensive is the SV car, as it has private compartments for two people. There is a Russian railway website where you can find out train schedules and fares in English.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #7

## Shopping for an Outfit in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 14 Cultural Insight

# 7

# RUSSIAN

1. ЛЕРА: Можно посмотреть это синее пальто?
2. ПРОДАВЕЦ: Да, конечно.
3. ЛЕРА: Скажите, пожалуйста, оно теплое? На носу зима и мне нужно самое теплое пальто, так как я - мерзлячка, и мне постоянно холодно.
4. ПРОДАВЕЦ: Синее пальто конечно теплое, но вот это, коричневое, теплее.
5. ЛЕРА: Сколько оно стоит?
6. ПРОДАВЕЦ: Около 1000 долларов.
7. ЛЕРА: Ого, как дорого, а у вас есть более дешевое пальто?

# ROMANIZATION

1. LERA: Mozhno posmotret' eto sineye pal'to?
2. PRODAVETS: Da, konechno.
3. LERA: Skazhite, pozhaluysta, ono teploye? Na nosu zima i mne nuzhno samoye teploye pal'to, tak kak ya - merzlyachka, i mne postoyanno kholodno.
4. PRODAVETS: Sineye pal'to, konechno, teploye, no vot eto, korichnevoye, tepleye.
5. LERA: Skol'ko ono stoit?

CONT'D OVER



6. PRODAVETS: Okolo 1000 dollarov.
7. LERA: Ogo, kak dorogo, a u vas yest' boleye deshevoye pal'to?

## ENGLISH

1. LERA: Can I see this blue coat?
2. SELLER: Yes, of course.
3. LERA: Tell me, is it warm? Winter is coming, and I need the warmest coat because I'm a cold-sensitive person and I'm constantly cold.
4. SELLER: The blue coat is certainly warm, but the brown one is warmer.
5. LERA: How much does it cost?
6. SELLER: About one thousand dollars.
7. LERA: Wow, how expensive. Do you have any cheaper ones?

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
коричневое	korichnevoye	brown	adjective	neuter
около	okolo	about, around, near	adverb	
синее	sineye	blue, dark blue	adjective	neuter
пальто	pal'to	coat	noun	neutral

на носу	na nosu	near at hand, soon	phrase	
зима	zima	winter	noun	feminine
так как	tak kak	because, since, as	conjunction	
постоянно	postoyanno	constantly, always	adverb	
мерзлячка	merzlyachka	someone with low tolerance to cold weather (female version)	noun	feminine
дешевле	deshevle	cheap (cheaper)	adjective	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Он купил дорогой коричневый костюм. Мне нравится.</b>  <i>On kupil dorogoy korichnevyy kostyum. Mne nravitsya.</i></p> <p>"He bought an expensive brown suit. I like it."</p>	<p><b>Около кафе находится банк.</b>  <i>Okolo kafe nakhoditsya bank.</i></p> <p>"There is a bank near the cafe."</p>
<p><b>Синее море...Жёлтый песок...Рай!</b>  <i>Sineye more...Zholtyy pesok...Ray!</i></p> <p>Blue sea ... Yellow sand ... Heaven!</p>	<p><b>Новое пальто можно купить в магазине "Одежда".</b>  <i>Novoye pal'to mozhno kupit' v magazine "Odezhda".</i></p> <p>"You can buy a new coat at the store "Clothes"."</p>

<p><b>На носу экзамены, а он постоянно играет в игры.</b></p> <p><i>Na nosu ekzameny, a on postoyanno igrayet v igry.</i></p> <p>"Exams are soon but he's playing video games non-stop."</p>	<p><b>Зима в России очень холодная.</b></p> <p><i>Zima v Rossii ochen' kholodnaya.</i></p> <p>"Winter in Russia is very cold."</p>
<p><b>Я куплю это пальто, так как оно теплее и дешевле.</b></p> <p><i>Ya kuplyu eto pal'to, tak kak ono tepleye i deshevle.</i></p> <p>"I will buy this coat because it is warmer and cheaper."</p>	<p><b>Он постоянно жалуется, что всё плохо.</b></p> <p><i>On postoyanno zhaluyetsya, chto vso plokho.</i></p> <p>"He is constantly complaining that everything is bad."</p>
<p><b>Она такая мерзлячка, что одевает шубу весной.</b></p> <p><i>Ona takaya merzlyachka, chto odevayet shubu vesnoy.</i></p> <p>"She is so sensitive to the cold that she wears a fur coat in spring."</p>	<p><b>Этот билет на самолёт очень дорогой, есть дешевле?</b></p> <p><i>Etot билет na samolot ochen' dorogoy, yest' deshevle?</i></p> <p>"This air ticket is very expensive, is there a cheaper one?"</p>
<p><b>Эту сумку можно купить дешевле на рынке.</b></p> <p><i>Etu sumku mozhno kupit' deshevle na rynke.</i></p> <p>"You can buy this bag for a cheaper price in the market."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### на носу (*na nosu*)

The first key phrase for this lesson is **на носу** (*na nosu*), which we can translate as "near at hand" or "soon."

Let's look at an example from the dialogue.

### For Example:

1. На носу зима и мне нужно самое теплое пальто.  
*Na nosu zima i mne nuzhno samoye teploye pal'to.*  
"Winter is coming, and I need the warmest coat."

The preposition **на** (*na*) means "on," and the noun **носу** (*nosu*) means "nose" in the prepositional case. So literally, this phrase means "on the nose." Something is so close that it is hard not to notice. This expression means that an event is approaching and will happen very soon.

### For Example:

1. На носу экзамены, а он гуляет.  
*Na nosu ekzameny, a on gulyayet.*  
"The exams are soon, but he is going out and having fun."
2. На носу Новый год, а мы еще не купили ёлку.  
*Na nosu Novyy god, a my yeshche ne kupili yolku.*  
"The New Year is coming, but we still haven't bought a New Year's tree."

### мерзлячка (*merzlyachka*)

The second key word is **мерзлячка** (*merzlyachka*), which we can translate as a person who is sensitive to cold weather or who has a low tolerance for it. **Мерзлячка** (*merzlyachka*) is a feminine noun, whereas **мерзляк** (*merzlyak*) is masculine. This word is very informal, and we often use it in a jocular sense. A person who is sensitive to the cold in this way feels colder than the average person in standard weather conditions.

### For Example:

1. Она такая мерзлячка, что одевает шубу весной.  
*Ona takaya merzlyachka, chto odevayet shubu vesnoy.*  
"She is so sensitive to the cold that she wears a fur coat at spring."

As we use it in a comical sense, Russians also often use the term to refer to themselves.

## GRAMMAR

## The Focus of This Lesson Is Comparative Adjectives.

Синее пальто, конечно, теплое, но вот это, коричневое, теплее.

*Sineye pal'to, konechno, teploye, no vot eto, korichnevoye, tepleye.*

"The blue coat is certainly warm, but the brown one is warmer."

We can use adjectives in Russian to compare the qualities of nouns. However, we cannot turn all adjectives into comparative adjectives. Thus, only qualitative adjectives, which refer to qualities of a subject that we can perceive with our five senses or which express an evaluation (good, bad) features of a character, may undergo comparison. Comparison means that some features or qualities of a subject are expressed more or less in this subject as opposed to in another one.

In Russian, we can make comparisons in three ways.

### 1. Forming Comparatives With Special Words

The first way is the easiest one. Everything you need is just to add special words to normal adjectives, agreed with a noun in gender, number, and case. Here they are:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
более	<i>boleye</i>	"more"
более...чем	<i>boleye...chem</i>	"more...than"
менее	<i>meneye</i>	"less"
менее...чем	<i>meneye...chem</i>	"less...than"

The grammar structure of this method of comparison goes like this:

Subject + "more"/"less" + adjective (agreed with a noun in gender, number, and case)

Subject + "more"/"less" + adjective (agreed with a noun in gender, number, and case) + "than" + another subject.

**For Example:**

1. Фильм "Аватар" + более + *интересный*.  
*Fil'm "Avatar" + boleye + interesnyy.*  
 Фильм "Аватар" более *интересный*.  
*Fil'm "Avatar" boleye interesnyy.*  
 "The movie 'Avatar' is more interesting."
  
2. Фильм "Аватар" + более + *интересный* + чем + фильм "Титаник."  
*Fil'm "Avatar" + boleye + interesnyy + chem + fil'm "Titanik."*  
 Фильм "Аватар" более *интересный*, чем фильм "Титаник."  
*Fil'm "Avatar" boleye interesnyy, chem fil'm "Titanik."*  
 "The movie 'Avatar' is more interesting than the movie 'Titanic.'"

Let me give you more examples.

### For Example:

1. Этот дом более *красивый*.  
*Etot dom boleye krasivyy.*  
 "This house is more beautiful."
  
2. Этот дом более *красивый*, чем *тот*.  
*Etot dom boleye krasivyy, chem tot.*  
 "This house is more beautiful than that one."
  
3. Коричневое пальто менее *дорогое*.  
*Korichnevoye pal'to meneye dorogoye.*  
 "The brown coat is less expensive."
  
4. Коричневое пальто менее *дорогое*, чем *синее*.  
*Korichnevoye pal'to meneye dorogoye, chem sineye.*  
 "The brown coat is less expensive than the blue one."
  
5. Эти словари более *новые*, чем *те*.  
*Eti slovari boleye novyye, chem te.*  
 "These dictionaries are newer than those."

But there are some exceptions. Thus, you cannot apply this rule to the next words (underlined letters are stressed):

<b>Adjective</b>	<b>Romanizati on</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Comparativ e Adjective</b>	<b>Romanizati on</b>	<b>"English"</b>
большой	<i>bol'shoy</i>	"big"	больше	<i>bol'she</i>	"bigger"
плохой	<i>plokhoy</i>	"bad"	хуже	<i>khuzh</i>	"worse"
хороший	<i>khoroshiy</i>	"good"	лучше	<i>luchshe</i>	"better"
маленький	<i>malen'kiy</i>	"small"	меньше	<i>men'she</i>	"smaller"

### For Example:

1. Этот парк больше, чем парк около моего дома.  
*Etot park bol'she, chem park okolo moyego doma.*  
"This park is bigger than the park near my home."
2. Он говорит по-русски лучше, чем я.  
*On govorit po-russki luchshe, chem ya.*  
"He speaks Russian better than I do."
3. Эта квартира меньше, чем я хочу.  
*Eta kvartira men'she, chem ya khochu.*  
"This apartment is smaller than what I want."

## 2. Forming Comparatives by Adding a Suffix to Adjectives

We can form the comparative degree of adjectives by adding the suffix **-ee** to the stem of an adjective. How can you do it? Easy: just remove the ending of an adjective and add the suffix **-ee** to a stem.

See the following table (underlined letters are stressed):

<b>Adjective</b>	<b>Romanizati on</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Comparativ e Adjective</b>	<b>Romanizati on</b>	<b>"English"</b>
тёплый	<i>tyoplyy</i>	"warm"	теплее	<i>tepleye</i>	"warmer"
интересны й	<i>interesnyy</i>	"interesting"	интереснее	<i>interesneye</i>	"more interesting"
красивый	<i>krasivyy</i>	"beautiful"	красивее	<i>krasiveye</i>	"more beautiful"

Here are some additional examples.

### For Example:

1. Погода сегодня *теплее*.  
*Pogoda segodnya tepleye.*  
"The weather is warmer today."
2. Эта книга *интереснее*.  
*Eta kniga interesneye.*  
"This book is more interesting."
3. Это платье *красивее*.  
*Eto plat'ye krasiveye.*  
"This dress is more beautiful."

Please note that Russians sometimes use the suffix **-ей** instead of **-ее**, like colloquial style, so please don't be confused if you see these kind of adjectives in newspapers or books.

### For Example:

<b>Adjective</b>	<b>Romanizati on</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Comparativ e Adjective</b>	<b>Romanizati on</b>	<b>"English"</b>
тёплый	<i>tyoplyy</i>	"warm"	теплее/ теплей	<i>tepleye / tepley</i>	"warmer"



трудный	<i>trudnyy</i>	"difficult"	труднее/ трудней	<i>trudneye/ trudney</i>	"more difficult"
---------	----------------	-------------	---------------------	------------------------------	---------------------

## 2. Forming Comparatives by Changing Consonants

Here is the last rule. The comparative adjectives ending in **-Г, -К, -Х, -Д, -Т** change the last letter of the stem (those that are consonants) to **-Ж, -Ч, -Ш** plus the suffix **-е**. If a stem ends in the consonants **-СТ**, you should change them to the letter **-Щ**.

Here is the grammatical structure:

Stem **-Г, -К, -Х, -Д, -Т** + **-Ж, -Ч, -Ш** + the suffix **-е**.

дорогой (*dorogoy*), meaning "expensive,"

дорог (*dorog*) (stem) - **г** (the last letter of a stem) + **ж** (for now it will be the last letter of a stem) + **-е** (suffix) = **дороже** *dorozhe* (more expensive).

### For Example

Adjective	<i>Romanizati on</i>	"English"	Comparativ e Adjective	<i>Romanizati on</i>	"English"
молодой	<i>molodoy</i>	"young"	моложе	<i>molozhe</i>	"younger"
громкий	<i>gromkiy</i>	"loud"	громче	<i>gromche</i>	"louder"
мягкий	<i>myagkiy</i>	"soft"	мягче	<i>myagche</i>	"softer"
тихий	<i>tikhiy</i>	"quiet"	тише	<i>tishe</i>	"quieter"
простой	<i>prostoy</i>	"simple"	проще	<i>proshche</i>	"simpler"
частый	<i>chastyy</i>	"often"	чаще	<i>chashche</i>	"more often"

Some adjectives don't follow this rule and are therefore irregular. You have to memorize these forms.

<b>Adjective</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Comparative Adjective</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
широкий	<i>shirokiy</i>	"wide"	шире	<i>shire</i>	"wider"
тонкий	<i>tonkiy</i>	"slim"	тоньше	<i>ton'she</i>	"slimmer"
узкий	<i>uzkiy</i>	"narrow"	уже	<i>uzhe</i>	"narrower"
дешёвый	<i>deshovyy</i>	"cheap"	дешевле	<i>desheвле</i>	"cheaper"
старый	<i>staryy</i>	"old"	стареe	<i>stareye</i>	"older" (about things)
старый	<i>staryy</i>	"old"	старше	<i>starshe</i>	"older" (about people)
сладкий	<i>sladkiy</i>	"sweet"	слаще	<i>slashche</i>	"sweeter"
бедный	<i>bednyy</i>	"poor"	беднее	<i>bedneye</i>	"poorer"
близкий	<i>blizkiy</i>	"close"	ближе	<i>blizhe</i>	"closer"
долгий	<i>dolgiy</i>	"long"	дольше	<i>dol'she</i>	"longer"
поздний	<i>pozdniy</i>	"late"	позже	<i>pozzhe</i>	"later"
редкий	<i>redkiy</i>	"rare"	реже	<i>rezhe</i>	"rarer"
короткий	<i>korotkiy</i>	"short"	короче	<i>koroche</i>	"shorter"
высокий	<i>vysokiy</i>	"high"	выше	<i>vyshe</i>	"higher"
далёкий	<i>daylokiy</i>	"far"	дальше	<i>dal'she</i>	"father"
богатый	<i>bogatyy</i>	"rich"	богаче	<i>bogache</i>	"richer"
мелкий	<i>melkiy</i>	"shallow"	мельче	<i>mel'che</i>	"shallower"

But this list of irregular adjectives is not complete.

**For Example:**

1. Иван богаче, чем Сергей.  
*Ivan bogache, chem Sergey.*  
"Ivan is richer than Sergei."
2. Эта дорога короче.  
*Eta doroga koroche.*  
"This way is shorter."
3. Это здание выше.  
*Eto zdaniye vyshe.*  
"This building is higher."
4. Этот парк ближе.  
*Etot park blizhe.*  
"This park is closer."

We form the superlative degree by adding the word **самый** (*samyu*), meaning "the most" in the masculine form, **самая** (*samaya*), meaning "the most" in the feminine form, **самое** (*samoye*), meaning "the most" in the neuter form, or **самые** (*samyye*), meaning "the most" in the plural form to the normal adjective, agreed with a noun in gender, case, and number.

**For Example:**

1. Это мороженое самое вкусное.  
*Eto morozhenoye samoye vkusnoye.*  
"This is the tastiest ice cream."
2. Эти часы самые дорогие.  
*Eti chasy samyye dorigiye.*  
"This watch is the most expensive."
3. Саша - самая красивая девушка.  
*Sasha - samaya krasivaya devushka.*  
"Sasha is the most beautiful girl."

4. Это самый грязный город.  
*Eto samyy gryaznyy gorod.*  
"This is the dirtiest city."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Get Ready to Celebrate in Russia

---

Russia's winters are rich in different holidays and events. The main holidays are New Year's Eve and Day (December thirty-first and January first), Christmas (January seventh), Old New Year (January thirteenth-fourteenth) and the Baptism of Jesus (January nineteenth). Because the New Year and Christmas holidays are very close to each other. Russians used to have between eight and ten official holidays per year. Unlike in Catholic countries, in Russia, Christmas is considered to be a calm, family holiday. On this day, people visit church and spend time in the bosom of their families. Russians don't celebrate this holiday in restaurants, nor do they exchange gifts. The Baptism of Jesus holiday is very interesting for many foreigners, because on this day, despite January and the frozen weather, Russians jump into freezing cold ice holes to mark the occasion of being baptized. Young and old participate in the event.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #8

## How Do You Study Russian?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# 8

# RUSSIAN

1. ЛЕРА: Алекс, это твоя книга на столе?
2. АЛЕКС: Да, моя. Я сейчас читаю про мировой кризис 2008 года.
3. ЛЕРА: Ты читаешь по-русски? И ты все понимаешь?
4. АЛЕКС: Нет конечно, но я все время использую русско-английский словарь, и много перевожу. Это очень улучшает мой русский.
5. ЛЕРА: Вот это да! Молодец!

# ROMANIZATION

1. LERA: Aleks, eto tvoya kniga na stole?
2. ALEKS: Da, moy. Ya seychas chitayu pro mirovoy krizis 2008 goda.
3. LERA: Ty chitayesh' po-ruski? I ty vse ponimayesh'?
4. ALEKS: Net konechno, no ya vse vremya ispol'zuyu rusko-angliyskiy slovar', i mnogo perevozh. Eto ochen' uluchshayet moy ruskiy.
5. LERA: Vot eto da! Molodets!

# ENGLISH

1. LERA: Aleks, Is this your book on the table?

CONT'D OVER

2. ALEX: Yeah, it's mine. I'm now reading about the global crisis of 2008.
3. LERA: Are you reading it in Russian? And you understand everything?
4. ALEX: Of course not, but I'm using a Russian-English dictionary all the time and translating a lot. It really improves my Russian.
5. LERA: Wow! Well done!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Вот это да!	vot eto da	Wow!, I can't believe it!	interjection	
про	pro	about	preposition	
мировой	mirovoy	world, global	adjective	masculine
читать	chitat'	to read	verb	
понимать	ponimat'	to understand	verb	
использовать	ispol'zovat'	to use	verb	
переводить	perevodit'	to translate	verb	
кризис	krizis	crisis	noun	masculine
молодец	molodets	Well done!, Good job!	noun	masculine
улучшать	uluchshat'	to improve	verb	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Вот это да! Посмотри как он играет в футбол! Просто профессионал!</b>  <i>Vot eto da! Posmotri kak on igrayet v futbol! Prosto professional!</i></p> <p>"Wow! Look how he plays football! Like a professional!"</p>	<p><b>Про что этот рассказ?</b>  <i>Pro chto etot rasskaz?</i></p> <p>"What is this story about?"</p>
<p><b>Я читаю книгу про вторую мировую войну.</b>  <i>Ya chitayu knigu pro vtoruyu mirovuyu voynu.</i></p> <p>"I am reading a book about the second world war."</p>	<p><b>Она читает журнал.</b>  <i>Ona chitayet zhurnal</i></p> <p>"She is reading a magazine."</p>
<p><b>Я ничего не понимаю.</b>  <i>Ya nichego ne ponimayu.</i></p> <p>"I don't understand anything."</p>	<p><b>Ты используешь Интернет Эксплорер или Мазилу Фаерфокс?</b>  <i>Ty ispol'zuyesh' Internet Eksplorer ili Mazilu Fayerfoks?</i></p> <p>"Are you using Internet Explorer or Mozilla Firefox?"</p>
<p><b>Он переводит рассказ с русского на английский.</b>  <i>On perevodit rasskaz s russkogo na angliyskiy.</i></p> <p>"He translates the story from Russian into English."</p>	<p><b>Что ты знаешь про кризис 2008 года?</b>  <i>Chto ty znayesh' pro krizis 2008 goda?</i></p> <p>"What do you know about the crisis of 2008?"</p>
<p><b>У него кризис среднего возраста.</b>  <i>U nego krizis srednego vozrasta.</i></p> <p>"He has a midlife crisis."</p>	<p><b>Он молодец, он сдал экзамен.</b>  <i>On molodets, on sdal ekzamen.</i></p> <p>"Well done, he passed the exam."</p>
<p><b>Молодец, Юра, так держать!</b>  <i>Molodets, Yura, tak derzhat'!</i></p> <p>"Good job Yura, keep it up!"</p>	<p><b>Витамины улучшают здоровье.</b>  <i>Vitaminy uluchshayut zdorov'ye.</i></p> <p>Vitamins improve health.</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE



## **Вот это да (Vot eto da)**

The first key phrase for this lesson is **Вот это да (Vot eto da)**, which we can translate as "Wow!" or "I can't believe it!" This is a conversational phrase that we use in informal situations. As a rule, the speakers know each other. This phrase is an exclamation, expressing surprise, joy, and delight by something or somebody. We also use it when we want to express our amazement or surprise about information we receive.

### **For Example:**

1. Он хорошо знает пять языков: русский, английский, французский, японский и немецкий. Вот это да! Он наверное *гений!*  
*On khorosho znayet pyat' yazykov: russskiy, angliyskiy, frantsuzskiy, yaponskiy i nemetskiy. Vot eto da! On navernoye geniy!*  
"He knows five languages well: Russian, English, French, Japanese, and German."  
"Wow! He's probably a genius!"
2. Вот это да! Посмотри как он играет в футбол! Просто *профессионал!*  
*Vot eto da! Posmotri kak on igrayet v futbol! Prosto professional!*  
"Wow! Look how he plays football! Like a professional!"

## **переводить (perevodit')**

The next key word for this lesson is the verb **Переводить (Perevodit')**, which we can translate as "to translate."

### **For Example:**

1. Он переводит текст с английского языка на *русский.*  
*On perevodit tekst s angliyskogo yazyka na russskiy.*  
"He is translating text from English into Russian."
2. Мне нужно перевести этот *текст.*  
*Mne nuzhno perevesti etot tekst.*  
"I need to translate this text."

But this verb has many meanings that we use often in Russian. Today, we will study two more meanings. The second meaning of this verb is "to transfer to another position." We use this

word when we want to tell that a person changed his job within one company: for example, he was in the sales department but started to work in the marketing department.

### For Example:

1. Его перевели в другой отдел.  
*Yego pereveli v drugoy otdel.*  
"He was transferred to another department."

The third meaning of this word is "to transfer money."

### For Example:

1. Мне нужно перевести деньги на счёт компании Альянс.  
*Mne nuzhno perevesti den'gi na schot kompanii Al'yans.*  
"I need to transfer money to the account of the Alliance company."
2. Ты знаешь как перевести деньги за границу?  
*Ty znayesh' kak perevesti den'gi zagranitsu?*  
"Do you know how to transfer money abroad?"

## GRAMMAR

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Conjugation of Verbs in the Present Tense.**

**Ты читаешь по-русски? И ты все понимаешь?**

***Ty chitayesh' po-russki? I ty vse ponimayesh'?***

**"Are you reading it in Russian? And you understand everything?"**

---

In this lesson, we will learn about conjugation of verbs in the present tense. The Russian present tense corresponds to the present simple and present continuous tenses in English. It means that Russians use present tense to describe things that are happening right now as well as well-known facts, daily events, and routine actions.

Depending on the person and number, all verbs in Russian change their endings in the present tense; in other words, they conjugate. We call it "verb conjugation." Thus, in English, we just need to add the ending "-s" to a verb to indicate that verb's subject is a third person: for example, "I sing" but "he sings." However, in the Russian language, there are six endings

that indicate the person and number (first, second, and third persons, singular and plural). As you can see, there are many more endings than in English.

All Russian regular verbs are divided into two fundamental groups, known as Conjugation 1 (first conjugation) and Conjugation 2 (second conjugation). To determine whether a verb belongs to the first or second conjugation, you just need to look at its ending in the infinitive form (it corresponds to English verbs with the infinitive particle "to," as in "to read"), in other words, the dictionary form.

Basically, in the infinitive form, Russian verbs have the infinitive endings **-ТЬ (t')**, **ТИ (ti)**, or **ЧЬ (ch')**.

Verbs that fall into the first conjugation usually end in **-АТЬ (-at')**, **-ЯТЬ (-yat')**, **-ОТЬ (ot')** - **ЕТЬ (et')**, **-УТЬ (ut')** etc. Verbs ending in **-ИТЬ (-it')** fall into the second conjugation.

### For Example:

1. **КУПИТЬ**  
*kupit'*  
"to buy"

The verb **КУПИТЬ** (*kupit'*) falls into the second conjugation, as it ends in **-ИТЬ (-it')**: **куп - ить (kup-it')**.

1. **ЧИТАТЬ**  
*chitat'*  
"to read"

It falls into first conjugation as it ends in **-АТЬ (-at')**: **чит - ать (chit - at')**.

Now let's have a closer look at how the endings of verbs in the first conjugation change depending on their person and number.

---

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Verb Ending in Conjunction 1</b>	<b>Romanization</b>
Я	<i>ya</i>	-y/-ю	<i>-u/-yu</i>
Оно	<i>ono</i>	-et/ёт	<i>-yet/yot</i>

---

Ты	<i>ty</i>	-ешь/ёшь	-yesh'/yosh'
Мы	<i>my</i>	-ем/ём	-yem/yom
Он	<i>on</i>	-ет/ёт	-yet/yot
Вы	<i>vy</i>	-ете/ёте	-yete/yote
Она	<i>ona</i>	-ет/ёт	-yet/yot
Они	<i>oni</i>	-ут/-ют	-ut/-yut

This rule is the same for all regular verbs of the first conjugation. To form a verb in the present tense, you need to drop the ending **-ТЬ (t')** and add the appropriate personal ending.

Take a look at this example:

**VERB - ТЬ + appropriate ending.**

**For Example:**

1. **ЧИТАТЬ** (*chitat*) - **-ТЬ (t')** + **-ЕТ (-yet)** =  
**ЧИТАЕТ**  
*chitayet*  
 "He is reading."

Let's conjugate the verb **ЧИТАТЬ** (*chitat*), meaning "to read."

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Romanization</b>
Я	<i>ya</i>	читаю	<i>chitayu</i>
Оно	<i>ono</i>	читает	<i>chitayet</i>
Ты	<i>ty</i>	читаешь	<i>chitayesh'</i>
Мы	<i>my</i>	читаем	<i>chitayem</i>
Он	<i>on</i>	читает	<i>chitayet</i>

Вы	<i>vy</i>	читаете	<i>chitayete</i>
Она	<i>ona</i>	читает	<i>chitayet</i>
Они	<i>oni</i>	читают	<i>chitayut</i>

### For Example:

1. Я читаю.  
*Ya chitayu.*  
"I am reading."
2. Мой папа читает журнал.  
*Moу papa chitayet zhurnal.*  
"My father is reading a magazine."
3. Что вы читаете?  
*Chto vy chitayete?*  
"What are you reading?"

Please note that there are some exceptions to this rule. The verbs *брить* (*brit'*), meaning "to shave"; *стелить* (*stelit'*), meaning "to lay"; *пить* (*pit'*), meaning "to drink"; *жить* (*zhit'*), meaning "to live"; *ошибиться* (*oshibit'sya*), meaning "to make a mistake"; *бить* (*bit'*), meaning "beat"; and *лить* (*lit'*), meaning "pour" fall into the first conjugation despite their ending **-ИТЬ** (*-it'*).

Let's take a look at the conjugation of some verbs.

### The verb *жить* (*zhit'*), meaning "to live"

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Romanization</b>
Я	<i>ya</i>	живу	<i>zhivu</i>
Оно	<i>ono</i>	живёт	<i>zhivyot</i>
Ты	<i>ty</i>	живёшь	<i>zhivyosh'</i>
Мы	<i>my</i>	живём	<i>zhivyom</i>

Он	<i>on</i>	живёт	<i>zhivyot</i>
Вы	<i>vy</i>	живёте	<i>zhivyote</i>
Она	<i>ona</i>	живёт	<i>zhivyot</i>
Они	<i>oni</i>	живут	<i>zhivut</i>

Now let's have a closer look at how the endings of verbs in the second conjugation change depending on their person and number.

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Verb Ending in Conjugation 2</b>	<b>Pronoun</b>
Я	<i>ya</i>	-ю (-у)	<i>-yu (-u)</i>
Оно	<i>ono</i>	-ИТ	<i>-it</i>
Ты	<i>ty</i>	-ИШЬ	<i>-ish'</i>
Мы	<i>my</i>	-ИМ	<i>-im</i>
Он	<i>on</i>	-ИТ	<i>-it</i>
Вы	<i>vy</i>	-ИТЕ/ЁТЕ	<i>-ite</i>
Она	<i>ona</i>	-ИТ	<i>-it</i>
Они	<i>oni</i>	-ЯТ (-АТ)	<i>-yat (-at)</i>

The grammar structure is the same as for the first conjugation.

Let's conjugate the verb **учить** (*uchit*), meaning "to teach," "to learn," or "to study."

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Romanization</b>
Я	<i>ya</i>	учу	<i>uchu</i>
Оно	<i>ono</i>	учит	<i>uchit</i>

Ты	<i>ty</i>	учишь	<i>uchish'</i>
Мы	<i>my</i>	учим	<i>uchim</i>
Он	<i>on</i>	учит	<i>uchit</i>
Вы	<i>vy</i>	учите	<i>uchite</i>
Она	<i>ona</i>	учит	<i>uchit</i>
Они	<i>oni</i>	учат	<i>uchat</i>

### For Example:

1. Мы учим русский язык.  
*My uchim russkiy yazyk.*  
"We are studying Russian (language)."
2. Она учит английский язык.  
*Ona uchit angliyskiy yazyk.*  
"She is studying English."

Please note that there are some exceptions to this rule. There are some words that you have to remember. These fall into the second conjugation in spite of their endings. Small children memorize them by learning the following short poem by heart:

*Гнать gnat', держать derzhat'*

*Терпеть terpet', обидеть obidet',*

*Слышать slyshat', видеть videt'*

*Ненавидеть nenavidet' и зависеть zaviset'*

*И вертеть vertet' и ещё yeshcho*

*Дышать dyshat', смотреть smotret'.*

---

**Russian**

**Romanization**

**"English"**

---

гнать	<i>gnat'</i>	"to drive"
держать	<i>derzhat'</i>	"to hold"
терпеть	<i>terpet'</i>	"to endure"
обидеть	<i>obidet'</i>	"to offend"
слышать	<i>slyshat'</i>	"to hear"
видеть	<i>videt'</i>	"to see"
ненавидеть	<i>nenavidet'</i>	"to hate"
зависеть	<i>zaviset'</i>	"to depend"
вертеть	<i>vertet'</i>	"to twirl," "to turn," or "to twist"
дышать	<i>dyshat'</i>	"to breathe"
смотреть	<i>smotret'</i>	"to watch"

### For Example:

1. Я смотрю кино.  
*Ya smotryu kino.*  
"I am watching a movie."
2. Мы держим книги.  
*My derzhim knigi.*  
"We are holding the books."
3. Она ненавидит ложь.  
*Ona nenavidit lozh'.*  
"She hates lies."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT



## Going to School in Russia

---

Education in Russia is generally provided and financed by the state. In accordance with the Constitution of the Russian Federation, the accessibility and gratuity of preschool, general secondary, and vocational secondary education in public and municipal educational institutions and enterprises are guaranteed. School education is free for everyone. According to data of the federal state statistics service, the percentage of literacy in Russia's countryside areas is about 100%.

There are two types of higher education in Russia: self-financed and state-finance. To enter both programs, prospective students need to pass entrance exams, but the passing score is higher for state-finance programs. The most popular subjects are law, economics, marketing, and IT.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #9

## Getting Around Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 13 Cultural Insight

# 9

# RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Лера, ты случайно не знаешь сколько стоит билет на самолет до Киева?
2. ЛЕРА: Когда я покупала, он стоил около 300 долларов туда-обратно.
3. АЛЕКС: А билет на поезд?
4. ЛЕРА: Тебя интересует купе или плацкарт?
5. АЛЕКС: А есть существенная разница?
6. ЛЕРА: Конечно, купе намного дороже. Я думаю, что купе стоит примерно 200 долларов, а плацкарт – 150.
7. АЛЕКС: Эх, тогда мой выбор - автобус.

# ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Lera, ty sluchayno ne znayesh' skol'ko stoit bilet na samolet do Kiyeva?
2. LERA: Kogda ya pokupala, on stoil okolo 300 dollarov tuda-obratno.
3. ALEKS: A bilet na poyezd?
4. LERA: Tebya interesuyet kupe ili platskart?
5. ALEKS: A yes' sushchestvennaya raznitsa?

CONT'D OVER

6. LERA: Konechno, kupe namnogo dorozhe. Ya dumayu, chto kupe stoit primerno 200 dollarov, a platskart – 150.
7. ALEKS: Ekh, togda moy vybor - avtobus.

## ENGLISH

1. ALEX: Lera, do you by any chance know how much a plane ticket to Kiev costs?
2. LERA: When I bought it, it cost around three hundred dollars for a round trip.
3. ALEX: And a train ticket?
4. LERA: Are you interested in a coupe or in a reserved seat?
5. ALEX: Is there a significant difference?
6. LERA: Of course, a coupe is much more expensive. I think that the coupe costs around two hundred dollars, and a reserved seat is one hundred and fifty.
7. ALEX: Ah, then my choice is the bus.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
интересовать	interesovat'	to interest	verb	

выбор	vybor	choice	noun	masculine
разница	raznitsa	difference	noun	feminine
существенная	sushchestvennaya	significant	adjective	feminine
билет	bilet	ticket	noun	masculine
случайно	sluchaino	by accident, accidentally	adverb	
Ты случайно не знаешь?	Ty sluchayno ne znayesh'?	Do you by any chance know?	phrase	
самолёт	samolyot	plane	noun	masculine
около	okolo	about, around, near	adverb	
думать	dumat'	to think	verb	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Сергея интересует вопрос экологии в городе.</b></p> <p><i>Sergeya interesuyet vopros ekologii v gorode.</i></p> <p>"Sergei is interested in the question of ecology in the city."</p>	<p><b>У каждого человека есть выбор.</b></p> <p><i>U kazhdogo cheloveka yest' vybor.</i></p> <p>"Every person has a choice."</p>
<p><b>Он любит Кристи. Но разница в возрасте огромная.</b></p> <p><i>On lyubit Kristi. No raznitsa v vozraste ogromnaya.</i></p> <p>"He loves Christie. But the age difference is huge."</p>	<p><b>Его выбор имеет существенное влияние на компанию.</b></p> <p><i>Yego vybor imeyet sushchestvennoye vliyaniye na kompaniyu.</i></p> <p>His choice has a significant impact on the company.</p>

<p><b>У тебя есть билет на концерт “Rolling Stones”?</b>  <i>U tebya yest' bilet na kantsert "Rolling Stones"?</i></p> <p>"Do you have a ticket for the "Rolling Stones" concert?"</p>	<p><b>Дайте, пожалуйста, два билета на это шоу.</b>  <i>Dayte, pazhalusta, dva bileta na eta shou.</i></p> <p>"Please, give me two tickets to this show."</p>
<p><b>Пять билетов на спектакль, пожалуйста.</b>  <i>Pyat' biletaf na spektakl', pazhalusta.</i></p> <p>"Five tickets for the show, please."</p>	<p><b>Мне надо купить билеты на самолёт.</b>  <i>Mne nada kupit' bilety na samalyot.</i></p> <p>"I need to buy some plane tickets."</p>
<p><b>Ваш билет, пожалуйста.</b>  <i>Vash bilet, pazhalusta.</i></p> <p>"Your ticket, please." (formal)</p>	<p><b>Я случайно потеряла свой кошелёк.</b>  <i>Ya sluchayno poteryala svoy koshelok.</i></p> <p>"I accidentally lost my wallet."</p>
<p><b>Вы случайно не знаете, где останавливается автобус до “Шереметьево”?</b>  <i>Vy sluchayno ne znayete, gde ostanavlivayetsya avtobus do "Sheremet'yevu"?</i></p> <p>"Do you by any chance know, where the bus to the "Sheremetyevo" stops?"</p>	<p><b>Ты случайно не знаешь, Анна сейчас дома?</b>  <i>Ty sluchayno ne znayesh', Anna seychas doma?</i></p> <p>"Do you happen to know if Anna is at home now?"</p>
<p><b>Я боюсь летать на самолетах.</b>  <i>Ya boyus' letat' na samoletakh.</i></p> <p>"I'm afraid of flying on planes."</p>	<p><b>Около кафе находится банк.</b>  <i>Okolo kafe nakhoditsya bank.</i></p> <p>"There is a bank near the cafe."</p>
<p><b>Я много думаю про работу.</b>  <i>Ya mnogo dumayu pro rabotu.</i></p> <p>I think a lot about work.</p>	<p><b>Я думаю, нам нужно уходить.</b>  <i>Ya dumayu, nam nuzhno ukhodit'.</i></p> <p>"I think we should leave."</p>
<p><b>Что ты об этом думаешь?</b>  <i>Chto ty ob etom dumayesh'?</i></p> <p>"What do you think about it?"</p>	<p><b>Думаю, ты прав.</b>  <i>Dumayu, ty prav.</i></p> <p>"I think you are right."</p>

---

## О чём ты думаешь?

*O chom ty dumayesh'?*

"What are you thinking about?"

---

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### Ты случайно не знаешь? (*Ty sluchayno ne znayesh'?*)

The first key phrase for this lesson is **Ты случайно не знаешь?** (*Ty sluchayno ne znayesh'?*), which we can translate as "Do you by any chance know?" or "Do you happen to know?" The rest of the question can appear before or after this phrase.

Let's break this phrase down to know the meaning of every word. The pronoun **ты** (*ty*) means "you." We can translate the adverb **случайно** as "accidentally" or "by chance," and in this phrase, it serves as a parenthetical word expressing the assumption. The verb **знаешь** (*znayesh'*) means "know." We can translate the particle **не** (*ne*) as the expression "don't." So literally, this phrase means "Don't you know by chance."

We use this phrase when we assume that a person may have some useful information for us and we want to ask about this information.

### For Example:

1. Ты случайно не знаешь, Анна сейчас дома?  
*Ty sluchayno ne znayesh', Anna seychas doma?*  
"Do you happen to know whether Anna is at home now?"
2. Вы случайно не знаете, где останавливается автобус до Шереметьево?  
*Vy sluchayno ne znayete, gde ostanavlivayetsya avtobus do Sheremet'yevu?*  
"Do you by any chance know where the bus to the Sheremetyevo stops?"

### около (*okolo*)

The next key word for this lesson is an adverb **около** (*okolo*), which we can translate as "about," "around," or "near."

This adverb has two meanings:

1. It is indicating that something or someone is situated very close or near.

**For Example:**

1. Около моего дома красивый парк.  
*Okolo moyego doma krasivyy park.*  
"There is a beautiful park near my house."
2. Я живу около университета.  
*Ya zhivu okolo universiteta.*  
"I live near university."

2. It points out the approximate amount or number of something or somebody.

**For Example:**

1. Билет стоит около тысячи долларов.  
*Bilet stoit okolo tysyachi dollarov.*  
"The ticket costs about one thousand dollars."
2. Самолёт прилетает около семи часов вечера.  
*Samolyot priletayet okolo semi chasov vechera.*  
"The plane arrives around seven p.m."
3. Высота этой статуи около двух метров.  
*Vysota etoy statui okolo dvukh metrov.*  
"The height of the statue is about two meters."

## GRAMMAR

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Past Tense Verbs.**

**Когда я покупала, он стоил около 300 долларов туда-обратно.**

***Kogda ya pokupala, on stoil okolo 300 dollarov tuda-obratno.***

**"When I bought it, it cost around \$300 for a round-trip."**



In this lesson, you will learn how to form past tense Russian verbs. In Russian, the past tense corresponds to the past simple, past continuous, present perfect, and the past perfect tenses of English. Verbs in the past tense should agree in gender and number with their subjects.

To form the past tense, you need to drop the infinitive ending **-ТЬ** (*t'*) and add the following endings:

Ending	Russian	Romanization
Masculine	-л	<i>l</i>
Feminine	-ла	<i>la</i>
Neuter	-ло	<i>lo</i>
Plural	-ли	<i>li</i>

This rule is applied to verbs of both conjugations.

Here is the grammar structure:

### Verb - ТЬ + л/ла/ло/ли

**ЧИТАТЬ** (*chitat'*), meaning "to read" - **ТЬ** (*t'*) + **-ла** (*la*) = **ЧИТАЛА** (*chitala*), meaning "She was reading."

Let's take a look at the following table:

Pronoun	Romanization	Verb	Romanization
Я	<i>ya</i>	читал/читала (depending on gender)	<i>chital/chitala</i>
Оно	<i>ono</i>	читало	<i>chitalo</i>
Ты	<i>ty</i>	читал/читала (depending on gender)	<i>chital/chitala</i>

Мы	<i>my</i>	читали	<i>chitali</i>
Он	<i>on</i>	читал	<i>chital</i>
Вы	<i>vy</i>	читали	<i>chitali</i>
Она	<i>ona</i>	читала	<i>chitala</i>
Они	<i>oni</i>	читали	<i>chitali</i>

### For Example:

1. Я читал журнал. (**чита+л**)  
*Ya chital zhurnal.*  
"I was reading a magazine."
2. Он писал письмо. (**писа +л**)  
*On pisal pis'mo.*  
"He was writing a letter."
3. Дети смотрели телевизор. (**смотре+ли**)  
*Deti smotreli televizor.*  
"The children were watching television."
4. Мы купили новый дом. (**купи+ли**)  
*My kupili novyy dom.*  
"We bought a new house."

To form the past tense from the reflexive verbs ending in **-ТЬСЯ** (*-t'sya*), you need to remove the ending **-ТЬ** (*t'*) and add the ending **-ся** (*-sya*) after **-л** (*l*), and **-сь** (*-s'*) after **-ла** (*la*), **-ло** (*lo*), **-ли** (*li*).

Here is the grammar structure:

### Verb - ТЬСЯ + Л + СЯ

**Учиться** (*Uchit'sya*), meaning "to study" - **ТЬСЯ** = **Учи** (*Uchi*)

**Учи (Uchi) + Л + СЯ = Учился (uchilsya)**

**Verb - ТЬ + ЛА/ЛО/ЛИ + СЬ**

**Учиться (Uchit'sya), meaning "to study" - ТЬСЯ = Учи (Uchi)**

**Учи (Uchi) + ЛА/ЛО/ЛИ + СЬ = Училась/училось/учились (Uchilas'/uchilos'/uchilis')**

**For Example:**

1. я учился/училась (depending on gender)  
*ya uchilsya/ uchilas'*  
"I was studying"
2. мы учились  
*my uchilis'*  
"we were studying"
3. она училась  
*ona uchilas'*  
"she was studying"
4. вы учились  
*vy uchilis'*  
"you were studying"
5. он учился  
*on uchilsya*  
"he was studying"
6. они учились  
*oni uchilis'*  
"they were studying"

Let me give you some sample sentences.

**For Example:**

1. Он одевается и собирается на *работу*.  
*On odevayetsya i sobirayetsya na rabotu.*  
"He is dressing and preparing to leave for work."
2. Она училась в *университете*.  
*Ona uchilas' v universitete.*  
"She was studying at University."
3. Они уже вернулись *домой*?  
*Oni uzhe vernulis' domoy?*  
"Have they returned home?"

There are, however, some exceptions to this rule. Some verbs have a specific past tense form. You just need to remember them. For example, the verb **идти** (*idti*), meaning "to go," totally changes its stem in the past tense.

### Verb **идти** (*idti*), meaning "to go"

Pronoun	Verb	Romanization	"English"
Я ( <i>ya</i> ) "I"	шёл/шла (depending on gender)	<i>shol/shla</i>	"went/was going"
Ты ( <i>ty</i> ) "you"	шёл/шла (depending on gender)	<i>shol/shla</i>	"went/was going"
Он ( <i>on</i> ) "he"	шёл	<i>shol</i>	"went/was going"
Она ( <i>ona</i> ) "she"	шла	<i>shla</i>	"went/was going"
Оно ( <i>ono</i> ) "it"	шло	<i>shlo</i>	"went/was going"
Мы ( <i>my</i> ) "we"	шли	<i>shli</i>	"went/were going"
Вы ( <i>vy</i> ) "you"	шли	<i>shli</i>	"went/were going"

Они (они) "they"	шли	<i>shli</i>	"went/were going"
------------------	-----	-------------	-------------------

### For Example:

1. Она шла в университет.  
*Ona shla v universitet.*  
"She was going to the university."
2. Мы шли в магазин и встретили *Ивана*.  
*My shli v magazin i vstretili Ivana.*  
"We were going to the store and met Ivan."

The verb **есть** (*yest'*), meaning "to eat," also changes its stem in the past tense: **ел** (*yel*) (masculine), **ела** (*ela*) (feminine), **ело** (*yelo*) (neuter), **ели** (*yeli*) (plural).

Here is one more rule that you have to remember: "The verbs with a stem ending in the consonants **-б, -п, -г, -к, -х, -з, -с,** and **-р** don't have the ending **-л** (*l*) in the masculine singular form. However, this rule works only for the masculine singular form.

Let's take a look at the grammar structure.

### Verb - Ть

**умереть** (*umeret'*), meaning "to die" - **-ть** (*t*) or **-ти** (*ti*) = **умер** (*umer*) but **умерла** (*umerla*), **умерло** (*umerlo*), **умерли** (*umerli*).

Let me give you some more examples.

Russian	Romanization	"English"
нести	<i>nesti</i>	"to carry"
нёс	<i>nyos</i>	"he carried"
несла	<i>nesla</i>	"she carried"
несло	<i>neslo</i>	"it carried"

**For Example:**

1. Он нёс *продукты*.  
*On nyos produkty.*  
"He was carrying products."
2. Они несли подарки *детям*.  
*Oni nesli podarki detyam.*  
"They were carrying presents to kids."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Getting Around Russia

Transportation in Russia is quite expensive. For example, a ticket for five rides in Moscow metro costs 150 rubles (approximately five dollars), and a ticket for five rides on public buses costs about 100 rubles. The metro is the main means of transportation for city-dwellers and visitors to the capital. Actually, it is very old, as it was opened in 1935 and is famous for stations decorated with gorgeous mosaics, works of art in themselves. Also, in Russia, there are many air companies, which operate both international and domestic flights. Founded in 1923, Aeroflot-Russian Airlines is the biggest and the oldest air company in Russia. The symbols of "Aeroflot," a hammer and a sickle, are reminiscent of Soviet Union times.

By the way, many people in Russia, as well as in the Ukraine, use dollars to calculate price for air tickets or international tours. Some travel companies also indicate prices in dollars (or euro) for trips at their sites. Of course, payment will be made in rubles, but still, for many people dollars or euros are more convenient for estimating the price.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #10

## Exchanging Money in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 15 Cultural Insight

# 10

## RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Лера, ты не знаешь, где можно обменять доллары на рубли?
2. ЛЕРА: В любом банке или обменном пункте. Но я считаю, что самый лучший курс - в банке "Ситибанк".
3. АЛЕКС: А где находится этот банк?
4. ЛЕРА: Прямо в центре, на площади «Независимости». Вот его адрес.
5. АЛЕКС: Пойдешь со мной? На обратном пути поужинаем вместе в ресторане.
6. ЛЕРА: Ладно, уговорил!

## ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Lera, ty ne znayesh', gde mozhno pomenyat' dollary na rubli?
2. LERA: V lyubom banke ili obmennom punkte. No ya schitayu, chto samyy luchshiy kurs - v banke "Sitibank".
3. ALEKS: A gde nakhoditsya etot bank?
4. LERA: Pryamo v tsentre, na ploshchadi «Nezavisimosti». Vot yego adres.
5. ALEKS: Poydesh' so mnoy? Na obratnom puti pouzhinayem vmeste v restorane.
6. LERA: Ladno, ugovoril!

## ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER



1. ALEX: Lera, do you know where I can exchange dollars for rubles?
2. LERA: In any bank or exchange office. But I think that the best exchange rate is at Citibank.
3. ALEX: Where is this bank located?
4. LERA: Right in the center, in Independence Square. Here's the address.
5. ALEX: Will you go with me? On our way back home, we can have dinner together at a restaurant.
6. LERA: Okay, persuaded!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
обменять	obmenyat'	to exchange	verb	
любой	lyuboy	any	pronoun	masculine
обменный пункт	obmennyy punkt	exchange office	phrase	masculine
считать	schitat'	to consider, to count	verb	
курс	kurs	course; university year	noun	masculine
центр	tsentr	center	noun	masculine
площадь	ploshchad'	square	noun	feminine
уговаривать	ugovarivat'	to convince, to persuade	verb	

ладно	ladno	okay, well, fine	adverb
поужинать	pouzhinat'	to have dinner, supper	verb (perfective)

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Мне нужно обменять доллары на рубли.</b> <i>Mne nuzhno obmenyat' dollary na rubli.</i></p> <p>"I need to exchange dollars for rubles."</p>	<p><b>Давай обменяем это платье на другое?</b> <i>Davay obmenyayem eto plat'ye na drugoye?</i></p> <p>"Let's exchange this dress for another one!"</p>
<p><b>Приходи когда хочешь, в любой день.</b> <i>Prikhodi kogda khochesh', v lyuboy den'.</i></p> <p>Come when you want, at any day.</p>	<p><b>Где находится ближайший обменный пункт?</b> <i>Gde nakhoditsya blizhayshiy obmennyy punkt?</i></p> <p>Where is the nearest exchange office situated?</p>
<p><b>Я не люблю считать деньги.</b> <i>Ya ne lyublyu schitat' den'gi.</i></p> <p>"I do not like to count money."</p>	<p><b>Какой сегодня курс валют?</b> <i>Kakoy segodnya kurs valyut?</i></p> <p>"What is the currency exchange rate today?"</p>
<p><b>Какой сегодня курс доллара?</b> <i>Kakoy segodnya kurs dollara?</i></p> <p>"What is the dollar rate today?"</p>	<p><b>Она на втором курсе университета.</b> <i>Ona na vtorom kurse universiteta.</i></p> <p>"She's a sophomore in a university."</p>
<p><b>Я хожу на курсы вождения.</b> <i>Ya khozhu na kursy vozhdeniya.</i></p> <p>"I go to driving courses." / "I take driving courses."</p>	<p><b>Собор Василия Блаженного находится в центре Москвы.</b> <i>Sobor Vasiliya Blazhennogo nakhoditsya v tsentre Moskvy.</i></p> <p>"St. Basil's Cathedral is situated in the center of Moscow."</p>

<p><b>В центре Москвы много магазинов.</b>  <i>V tsyentrye Moskvy mnogo magazinov.</i></p> <p>"There are a lot of shops in the center of Moscow."</p>	<p><b>Мне надо в центр.</b>  <i>Mne nado v tsentr.</i></p> <p>"I need to go to the center (of the town)."</p>
<p><b>Площадь "Независимости" находится около станции метро "Театральная".</b>  <i>Ploshchad' "Nezavisimosti" nakhoditsya okolo stantsii metro "Teatral'naya".</i></p> <p>"The "Independence" square is situated near the metro station "Teatral'naya"."</p>	<p><b>Ребёнок уговаривает маму купить ему игрушку.</b>  <i>Rebyonok ugovarivayet mamu kupit' yemu igrushku.</i></p> <p>"The child is persuading his mother to buy him a toy."</p>
<p><b>Ну, ладно.</b>  <i>Nu, ladno.</i></p> <p>"Well, okay."</p>	<p><b>Давай поужинаем здесь!</b>  <i>Davay pouzhinayem zdes'!</i></p> <p>"Let's have dinner here."</p>

**Мы поужинали дома.**

*My pouzhinali doma.*

"We had dinner at home."

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### считать (*schitat'*)

The first key word for this lesson is the verb **считать** (*schitat'*), which in our dialogue has the meaning of, and we can translate it as, "to think" or "to consider."

#### For Example:

1. Я считаю, что Иван хороший человек.  
*Ya schitayu, chto Ivan khoroshiy chelovek.*  
 "I consider Ivan to be a good person."

2. Как ты считаешь, это кино *интересное*?  
*Kak ty schitayesh', eto kino interesnoye?*  
"What do you think, is this movie interesting?"

The second meaning of this verb is "to count" or "to calculate": for example, money, calories, profit, etc.

Let me give you some sample sentences.

### For Example:

1. Он любит считать чужие деньги.  
*On lyubit schitat' chuzhiye den'gi.*  
"He likes to count other people's money."
2. Компания считает свои убытки.  
*Kompaniya schitayet svoi ubytki.*  
"The company is calculating its losses."

### курс (*kurs*)

The next word for this lesson is the masculine noun **курс** (*kurs*), meaning "rate."

Here is an example from our dialogue.

### For Example:

1. Но я считаю, что самый лучший курс - в банке *Россия*.  
*No ya schitayu, chto samyy luchshiy kurs - v banke Rossiya.*  
"But I think that the best exchange rate is in the bank Russia."

When talking about currency or currency exchange, we translate the noun **курс** (*kurs*) as "rate" or "exchange rate."

### For Example:

1. Какой сегодня курс доллара?  
*Kakoy segodnya kurs dollara?*  
"What is the dollar rate today?"
2. Официальный курс валют устанавливается Центральным банком Российской Федерации.  
*Ofitsial'nyy kurs valyut ustanavlivayetsya Tsentral'nyy bankom Rossiyskoy Federatsii.*  
"The official currency exchange rate is set by the Central Bank of the Russian Federation."

But this noun has one more meaning: a direction of movement or activity.

### For Example:

1. курс корабля  
*kurs korablya*  
"ship's course"
2. Многие страны берут курс на развитие туризма.  
*Mnogiye strany berut kurs na razvitiye turizma.*  
"Many countries embark on the course of the development of tourism."

And the last meaning of this word is "course", a subject that you study at a university (but not at school) or some kind of a training program (in this meaning, we often use the word курс (*kurs*) in the plural).

### For Example:

1. Я взял в университете курс экономики.  
*Ya vzyal v universitete kurs ekonomiki.*  
"I took a course in economics at the University."
2. Иван пошел на курсы развития памяти.  
*Ivan poshel na kursy razvitiya pamyati.*  
"Ivan went to the courses on memory development."

## GRAMMAR

## The Focus of This Lesson Is the Prepositional Case.

**Лера: В любом банке или обменном пункте.**

*Lera: V lyubom banke ili obmennom punkte.*

"Lera: In any bank or exchange office."

---

We use the prepositional case in two cases: when we talk about our location and when we talk about our thoughts, feelings, and so on. Today, we will take a closer look at the first usage.

Here is a rule. We use the prepositional case when we want to express the location of something or somebody or when we want to point out the place of action. It's really very simple. The main question of the prepositional case is **Где?** (*Gde?*), meaning "Where?" or its variants **На чём?** (*Na chom?*), meaning "On what?" or **В чём?** (*V chom*), meaning "In what?"

Let's take a look at the formation of nouns in the prepositional case.

**Masculine nouns** will have the following endings:

If in the singular form, a stem ends in a consonant, you need to add the ending **-е** to the consonant.

**For Example:**

---

<b>Nominative Case Noun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Prepositional Case Noun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
банк	<i>bank</i>	"bank"	<b>в банке</b>	<i>v banke</i>	"in a/the bank"
стол	<i>stol</i>	"table"	<b>на столе</b>	<i>na stole</i>	"on the table"

---

**-й** and **-ь** will change to **-е**.

**For Example:**

Nominative Case Noun	Romanization	"English"	Prepositional Case Noun	Romanization	"English"
музей	<i>muzey</i>	"museum"	<b>в музее</b>	<i>v muzee</i>	"in the museum"
словарь	<i>slovar'</i>	"dictionary"	<b>в словаре</b>	<i>v slovare</i>	"in a dictionary"
букварь	<i>bukvar'</i>	"ABC book"	<b>в букваре</b>	<i>v bukware</i>	"in ABC book"

**-ий** will change to **-ии**.

**For Example:**

Nominative Case Noun	Romanization	"English"	Prepositional Case Noun	Romanization	"English"
санаторий	<i>sanatoriy</i>	"health resort"	<b>в санатории</b>	<i>v sanatorii</i>	"in a health resort"

But there are some nouns that will have a **-y** ending in the prepositional case despite ending in a consonant. These nouns will have the ending **-y**, but only if you are talking about their location (first usage of the prepositional case). They are:

Nominative Case Noun	Romanization	"English"	Prepositional Case Noun	Romanization	"English"
лес	<i>les</i>	"forest"	<b>в лесу</b>	<i>v lesu</i>	"in the forest"
мост	<i>most</i>	"bridge"	<b>на мосту</b>	<i>na mostu</i>	"on the bridge"

сад		"garden"	<b>в саду</b>	<i>v sadu</i>	"in the garden"
пол	<i>pol</i>	"floor"	<b>на полу</b>	<i>na polu</i>	"on the floor"
шкаф	<i>shkaf</i>	"closet"	<b>в шкафу</b>	<i>v shkafu</i>	"in the closet"
аэропорт	<i>aeroport</i>	"airport"	<b>в аэропорту</b>	<i>v aeroportu</i>	"in the airport"

You just need to remember them. If you want to talk about your feelings or thoughts (second usage of the prepositional case), such nouns follow the general rules of forming nouns in the prepositional case.

**Feminine nouns** will have the following endings:

**-a** will change to **-e**.

**For Example:**

<b>Nominative Case Noun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Prepositional Case Noun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
книга	<i>kniga</i>	"book"	<b>в книге</b>	<i>v knige</i>	"in the book"
полка	<i>polka</i>	"shelf"	<b>на полке</b>	<i>na polke</i>	"on the shelf"

**-я** will change to **-e**.

**For Example:**



Nominative Case Noun	Romanization	"English"	Prepositional Case Noun	Romanization	"English"
семья	<i>sem'ya</i>	"family"	<b>в семье</b>	<i>v sem'ye</i>	"in the family"

-ь will change to -и.

For Example:

Nominative Case Noun	Romanization	"English"	Prepositional Case Noun	Romanization	"English"
тетрадь	<i>tetrad'</i>	"notebook"	<b>в тетради</b>	<i>v tetradi</i>	"in the notebook"
площадь	<i>ploshchad'</i>	"square"	<b>на площади</b>	<i>na ploshchadi</i>	"on the square"

-ия will change to -ии.

For Example:

Nominative Case Noun	Romanization	"English"	Prepositional Case Noun	Romanization	"English"
Италия	<i>Italiya</i>	"Italy"	<b>в Италии</b>	<i>v Italii</i>	"in Italy"
аудитория	<i>auditoriya</i>	"auditorium"	<b>аудитории</b>	<i>auditorii</i>	"in auditorium"

There are some exceptions to this rule. Please remember them:

Nominative Case Noun	Romanization	"English"	Prepositional Case Noun	Romanization	"English"
парикмахерская	<i>parikmakher skaya</i>	"hair salon"	<b>В парикмахерской</b>	<i>v parikmakher skoy</i>	"in a hair salon"
столовая	<i>stolovaya</i>	"dining room"	<b>В столовой</b>	<i>v stolovoy</i>	"in dining room"

**Neuter nouns** have the following endings:

-о will change to -е.

**For Example:**

Nominative Case Noun	Romanization	"English"	Prepositional Case Noun	Romanization	"English"
ОКНО	<i>okno</i>	"window"	<b>на окне</b>	<i>na okne</i>	"on the window"

-е will remain the same.

**For Example:**

Nominative Case Noun	Romanization	"English"	Prepositional Case Noun	Romanization	"English"
поле	<i>pole</i>	"field"	<b>в поле</b>	<i>v pole</i>	"in the field"
море	<i>more</i>	"sea"	<b>в море</b>	<i>v more</i>	"in the sea"
кафе	<i>kafe</i>	"café"	<b>в кафе</b>	<i>v kafe</i>	"in the café"

**-ие** will change to **-ии**.

**For Example:**

<b>Nominative Case Noun</b>	<b>Romanizati on</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Prepositional Case Noun</b>	<b>Romanizati on</b>	<b>"English"</b>
общежитие	<i>obshchezhit iye</i>	"dormitory"	<b>в общежитии</b>	<i>v obshchezhit ii</i>	"in the dormitory"

Expressing a location or the place of action requires the usage of prepositions. That's why the prepositional case has the name "prepositional." Unlike other cases in Russian, we should always use the prepositional case with prepositions. There are not so many prepositions that we use with this case, so you can remember them easily. They are **в**, meaning "in"; **на**, meaning "on"; **при**, meaning "over"; and **о/об**, meaning "about."

We use the preposition **в** (*v*), meaning "in," when we want to point out a place or subject inside of which (or within which) the action takes place. In other words, the action takes place in an enclosed space. We also use this preposition with the names of countries, continents, cities, etc.

**For Example:**

1. **Деньги находятся в банке (банк - банке).**  
*Den'gi nakhodyatsya v banke*  
"The money is in the bank." (the literal meaning is "inside the bank")
2. **Где твои ключи? Они в сумке. (сумка - сумке)**  
*Gde tvoi klyuchi? Oni v sumke.*  
"Where are your keys? They are in the bag (inside the bag)."
3. **Иван учится в университете (университет - университете).**  
*Ivan uchitsya v universitete.*  
"Ivan is studying at university/inside the university." (same version for both meanings)

We use the preposition **на** (*na*), meaning "on," when we talk about an open space or the

surface of a subject, where somebody or something is located or an action takes place. We also use it when we talk about some activity in which we or someone else takes part.

### For Example:

1. Банк находится на площади.  
*Bank nakhoditsya na ploshchadi.*  
"The bank is located on the square." (Obviously, the square is an open space, so the bank cannot be situated in the square).
2. Книга на столе.  
*Kniga na stole.*  
"The book is on the table." (The table has a surface, and the book is lying on the surface of the table).
3. Я на экскурсии. (In this case, we are talking about some kind of activity in which we participate.)  
*Ya na ekskursii.*  
"I'm at the excursion."
4. Я на вечеринке. (I am participating in it).  
*Ya na vecherinke.*  
"I'm at a party."

### Language Tip

---

In our dialogue, there is the verb считать (*schitat'*). Let's see how it conjugates in the present tense.

---

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Romanization</b>
Я	<i>ya</i>	считаю	<i>schitayu</i>
Мы	<i>my</i>	считаем	<i>schitayem</i>
Ты	<i>ty</i>	считаешь	<i>schitayesh'</i>
Вы	<i>vy</i>	считаете	<i>schitayete</i>

---

Он/Она/Оно	<i>on/ona/ono</i>	считает	<i>schitayet</i>
Они	<i>oni</i>	считают	<i>schitayut</i>

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Where to Exchange Money in Russia

---

There are two places where you can exchange foreign currency to rubles: banks and exchange offices, which are situated almost everywhere: at the railway stations, supermarkets, underground walkways, etc. The exchange office, as a rule, has a yellow board with the written currency exchange rates for selling and for buying. The official exchange rates are set by the Central Bank of the Russian Federation, but it doesn't mean that the rates will be the same at the exchange office: they will probably be higher. In accordance with Russian legislation, paying in foreign currency is prohibited, so it is important to think about currency exchange upon arriving. Banks are open from nine a.m. until five p.m., whereas exchange offices are open twenty-four hours. Some exchange offices and banks may require you to show your passport.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #11

## What Are You Thinking About in Russia?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 14 Cultural Insight

# 11

## RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Лера, о чем ты сейчас думаешь?
2. ЛЕРА: Я думаю об отпуске. Я уже представляю, как я плаваю в море и загораю на пляже. А ты?
3. АЛЕКС: А я думаю о своей работе, о важном совещании...Нужно подготовиться. А моя помощница взяла отпуск.
4. ЛЕРА: Да..тяжело тебе. Но ты справишься.

## ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Lera, o chem ty seychas dumayesh'?
2. LERA: Ya dumayu ob otpuske. Ya uzhe predstavlyayu, kak ya plavayu v more i zagorayu na plyazhe. A ty?
3. ALEKS: A ya dumayu o svoey rabote, o vazhnom soveshchanii...Nuzhno podgotovit'sya. A moya pomoshchnitsa vzyala otpusk.
4. LERA: Da..tyazhelo tebe. No ty spravish'sya.

## ENGLISH

1. ALEX: Lera, what are you thinking about now?
2. LERA: I'm thinking about vacation. I'm imagining swimming in the sea and sunbathing on the beach. And you?

CONT'D OVER

3. ALEX: I'm thinking about my job, about an important meeting... I need to prepare. And my assistant is on vacation.
4. LERA: Yes...you have really hard times. But you'll manage it.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
помощница	pomoshchnitsa	assistant	noun	feminine
справиться	spravit'sya	to manage	verb	
отпуск	otpusk	vacation (work)	noun	masculine
представлять	predstavlyat'	to imagine, to represent	verb	
плавать	plavat'	to swim	verb	
море	more	sea	noun	neuter
загорать	zagorat'	to sunbathe	verb	
совещание	soveschaniye	meeting	noun	neutral
работа	rabota	work, job	noun	
подготовиться	podgotovit'sya	to prepare	verb	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

**У меня есть замечательная помощница - моя дочка.**

*U menya yest' zamechatel'naya pomoshchnitsa - moya dochka.*

"I have a wonderful assistant - my daughter."

**Я знаю, ты справишься с любыми трудностями.**

*Ya znayu, ty spravish'sya s lyubymi trudnostyami.*

"I know you will manage to solve any difficulties. "



<p><b>Когда твой отпуск?</b> <i>Kogda tvoy otpusk?</i></p> <p>"When is your vacation?"</p>	<p><b>Свой отпуск придется провести дома, так как нет денег на турпутевки.</b> <i>Svoy otpusk pridetsya provesti doma, tak kak net deneg na turputevki.</i></p> <p>"I will have to spend my vacation at home because I don't have any money to pay for a tour."</p>
<p><b>Он представляет страну на Олимпиаде.</b> <i>On predstavlyayet stranu na Olimpiade.</i></p> <p>"He represents the country at the Olympics. "</p>	<p><b>Все дети любят плавать в море.</b> <i>Vse deti lyubyat plavat' v more.</i></p> <p>"All kids love to swim in the sea."</p>
<p><b>Женщина плавала в бассейне.</b> <i>Zhenshchina plavala v basseyne.</i></p> <p>"A woman swam in the pool."</p>	<p><b>Ты знаешь где находится Черное море?</b> <i>Ty znayesh' gde nakhoditsya Chernoye more?</i></p> <p>"Do you know where the Black Sea is?"</p>
<p><b>Русские девушки любят загорать на пляже.</b> <i>Russkiye devushki lyubyat zagorat' na plyazhe.</i></p> <p>"Russian girls like to sunbathe on the beach."</p>	<p><b>У меня завтра важное совещание.</b> <i>U menya zavtra vazhnoye soveshchaniye.</i></p> <p>"I have an important meeting tomorrow."</p>
<p><b>Работники присутствовали на совещании.</b> <i>Rabotniki prisutstvovali na soveshchanii.</i></p> <p>"People attended the meeting."</p>	<p><b>Я люблю свою работу.</b> <i>Ya lyublyu svoyu rabotu..</i></p> <p>"I love my job."</p>
<p><b>У меня интересная работа, но я очень устаю к вечеру.</b> <i>U menya interesnaya rabota, no ya ochen' ustayu k vecheru.</i></p> <p>"I have an interesting job, but I get really tired by the evening."</p>	<p><b>Тебе нужно лучше подготовиться к экзаменам.</b> <i>Tebe nuzhno luchshe podgotovit'sya k ekzamenam.</i></p> <p>"You need to prepare better for the exams."</p>

---

**Чтобы подготовиться к вступительным экзаменам, мои родители наняли мне репетитора.**

*Chtoby podgotovit'sya k vstupitel'nym ekzamenam, moi roditeli nanyali mne repetitora.*

"In order to prepare for my entrance exam, my parents found me a tutor. "

---

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **представлять (*predstavlyat'*)**

The first key word for this lesson is the verb **представлять** (*predstavlyat'*), meaning "to imagine."

The first meaning, which you came across in our dialogue, is "to imagine."

#### **For Example:**

1. Он сидел и представлял себе сад и маленький уютный домик.  
*On sidel i predstavlyal sebe sad i malen'kiy uyutnyy domik.*  
"He was sitting and imagining a garden and homely little house."
2. Я представляю, как он обрадуется, когда узнает, что выиграл в лотерею.  
*Ya predstavlyayu, kak on obraduyetsya, kogda uznayet, chto vyigral v lotereyu.*  
"I imagine how glad he will be when he finds out he won the lottery."

If you turn to someone and use the word **представлять** (*predstavlyat'*), it will mean "can you imagine."

#### **For Example:**

1. Ты представляешь, он не пришел на совещание!  
*Ty predstavlyayesh', on ne prishel na soveshchaniye!*  
"Can you imagine, he didn't come to the meeting!"
2. Представляешь, уже зима.  
*Predstavlyayesh', uzhe zima.*  
"Can you imagine, it is winter already!"

The next meaning of this verb is "to represent" something or somebody, such as a country, company, client, and so on.

### For Example:

1. Юрист представляет клиента в суде.  
*Yurist predstavlyayet kliyenta v sude.*  
"A lawyer represents a client in court."
2. Этот спортсмен представляет Россию на Олимпиаде.  
*Etot sportsmen predstavlyayet Rossiyu na Olimpiade.*  
"This athlete represents Russia at the Olympics."

### работа (*rabota*)

Another key word for today is the feminine noun **работа** (*rabota*), which we can translate as "work" or "a job."

The first meaning of this noun is "a place where somebody works." It can be a company, bank, hospital, or any place where a person works. We often use it in expressions such as *идти на работу* (*idti na rabotu*), meaning "go to work," and *быть на работе* (*byt' na rabote*), meaning "to be at work."

### For Example:

1. Алло! Ира, а Саша дома?  
Нет, он сейчас на работе.  
*Allo! Ira, a Sasha doma?*  
*Net, on seychas na rabote.*  
"Hello! Ira, is Sasha at home?"  
"No, he is at work now."
2. Ты сейчас где?  
Я иду на работу.  
*Ty seychas gde?*  
*Ya idu na rabotu.*  
"Where are you now?"  
"I am going to work." (to the office, for example)

The next meaning is "occupation" or "business as a source of income."

### For Example:

1. Я сейчас ищу хорошую работу.  
*Ya seychas ishchu khoroshuyu rabotu.*  
"I am searching now for a good job."
2. Моя работа -представлять клиентов в суде.  
*Moya rabota -predstavlyat' kliyentov v sude.*  
"My job is representing clients in the court."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson Is the Prepositional Case of Adjectives and Pronouns.

**А я думаю о своей работе, о важном совещании.**

***A ya dumayu o svoyei rabote, o vazhnom soveshchanii.***

**"I am thinking about my job, about an important meeting."**

---

From lesson 10, you found out that we use the prepositional case when we want to denote the location of something or somebody. In addition to denoting location, we use the prepositional case when we want to express our thoughts or feelings or ask a question about or say something about something or somebody. It answers the questions: **О ком?** (*O kom?*), meaning "About whom?" and **О чём?** (*O chom?*), meaning "About what?" As a rule, we use the prepositional case with verbs such as **думать** (*dumat*), meaning "to think"; **говорить** (*govorit*), meaning "to say"; **рассказывать/рассказать** (*rasskazyvat'/rasskazat'*), meaning "to tell"; **спрашивать/спросить** (*sprashivat'/sprosit'*) meaning "to ask"; **знать** (*znat*), meaning "to know"; **читать** (*chitat*), meaning "to read"; **писать** (*pisat*), meaning "to write"; **заботиться** (*zabotit'sya*), meaning "to care"; **волноваться** (*volnovat'sya*), meaning "to worry"; or any other words that require the preposition "about." The endings of nouns in this case will be the same as we studied in Lesson 10.

We use the prepositional case with the following prepositions, which we can all translate into English as "about": **о, об, обо**. The usage of this preposition is really simple.

1) We should write **о** when the following noun begins with a consonant.

### For Example:

1. говорить о *проблеме*  
*govorit' o probleme*  
"to talk about a problem"
2. спрашивать о *зарплате*  
*sprashivat' o zarplate*  
"to ask about a salary"
3. читать о *кризисе*  
*chitat' o krizise*  
"to read about a crisis"

2) We should write **об** when the following noun begins with the vowels **-а, -у, -о, -и, and -э**.

### For Example:

1. волноваться об *Анне*.  
*volnovat'sya ob Anne*.  
"to worry about Anna"
2. рассказывать об *измене*.  
*rasskazyvat' ob izmene*.  
"to talk about adultery"
3. заботиться об *образовании*.  
*zabotit'sya ob obrazovanii*.  
"to care about education"

3) We should write **обо** only in such expressions as **обо мне** (*obo mne*), meaning "about me"; **обо всём** (*obo vsyom*), meaning "about everything," and **обо всех** (*obo vsekh*), meaning "about everyone."

### For Example:

1. Она всегда обо всём думает *наперёд*.  
*Ona vseгда obo vsyom dumayet naperyod.*  
 "She always thinks about everything in advance."
2. Он много обо мне *знает*.  
*On mnogo obo mne znayet.*  
 "He knows much about me."

In English, adjectives don't require any prepositional case. But don't forget that adjectives in the Russian language should agree with nouns in gender, number, and case. That's why if we use a noun in the prepositional case, we should also use the adjective in the same case. To put an adjective into the prepositional case, we need to add the endings **-ом, -ем, -ой, or -ей** to the stem, removing an ending of an adjective in the nominative case.

Here is the grammar structure:

adjective - ending of nominative case + ending of the prepositional case

Новый - ый +ом = Новом

Let's take a closer look.

Masculine and neuter adjectives will have the following endings:

-ом

If the stem of an adjective ends in a hard consonant, you just need to change its ending to -ом.

**For Example:**

<b>Russian</b>	<b><i>Romanizati</i></b> <i>on</i>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Russian</b>	<b><i>Romanizati</i></b> <i>on</i>	<b>"English"</b>
НОВЫЙ	<i>novyy</i>	"new" (masc uline)	О НОВОМ	<i>o novom</i>	"about new"

красивый	<i>krasivyy</i>	"beautiful" (masculine)	о красивом	<i>o krasivom</i>	"about beautiful"
новое	<i>novoye</i>	"new" (neuter)	о новом	<i>o novom</i>	"about new"
красивое	<i>krasivoye</i>	"beautiful" (neuter)	о красивом	<i>o krasivom</i>	"about beautiful"

-ем

If the stem of an adjective ends in soft consonant or **-ж, -ч, -ш, or -щ**, please add the ending -ем.

**For Example:**

<b>Russian</b>	<b><i>Romanization</i></b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Russian</b>	<b><i>Romanization</i></b>	<b>"English"</b>
синий	<i>siniy</i>	"blue" (masculine)	о синем	<i>o sinem</i>	"about blue"
свежий	<i>svezhiy</i>	"fresh" (masculine)	о свежем	<i>o svezhem</i>	"about fresh"
синее	<i>sineye</i>	"blue" (neuter)	о синем	<i>o sinem</i>	"about blue"
свежее	<i>svezheye</i>	"fresh" (neuter)	о свежем	<i>o svezhem</i>	"about fresh"

Feminine adjectives will have the following endings:

-ой, if the stem of an adjective ends in hard consonant.

**For Example:**

Russian	<i>Romanizati on</i>	"English"	Russian	<i>Romanizati on</i>	"English"
НОВАЯ	<i>novaya</i>	"new" (feminine)	О НОВОЙ	<i>o novoy</i>	"about new"
красивая	<i>krasivaya</i>	"beautiful" (feminine)	о красивой	<i>o krasivoy</i>	"about beautiful"

-ей, if the stem of an adjective ends in soft consonant or **-ж, -ч, -ш, or -щ**

**For Example:**

Russian	<i>Romanizati on</i>	"English"	Russian	<i>Romanizati on</i>	"English"
СИНЯЯ	<i>sinyaya</i>	"blue" (feminine)	о синей	<i>o siney</i>	"about blue"
свежая	<i>svezhaya</i>	"fresh" (feminine)	о свежей	<i>o svezhey</i>	"about fresh"

And the last point for this lesson is pronouns in prepositional case.

Nominative Case Pronoun	<i>Romanizati on</i>	"English"	Prepositional Case (pronoun + preposition)	<i>Romanizati on</i>	"English"
Я	<i>ya</i>	"I"	обо мне	<i>obo mne</i>	"about me"
ТЫ	<i>ty</i>	"you"	о тебе	<i>o tebe</i>	"about you"
ОН	<i>on</i>	"he"	о нём	<i>o nyom</i>	"about him"
ОНА	<i>ona</i>	"she"	о ней	<i>o ney</i>	"about her"
ОНО	<i>ono</i>	"it"	о нём	<i>o nyom</i>	"about it"



МЫ	<i>my</i>	"we"	о нас	<i>o nas</i>	"about us"
ВЫ	<i>vy</i>	"you"	о вас	<i>o vas</i>	"about you"
ОНИ	<i>oni</i>	"they"	о них	<i>o nikh</i>	"about them"

Please note that you can use any preposition of the prepositional case with pronouns as we studied in Lesson 10: not only о, meaning "about," but also в, meaning "in," and на, meaning "on" or "at."

### For Example:

- Я думаю о нём.  
*Ya dumayu o nem.*  
 "I am thinking about him."
- Это полка. На ней книги.  
*Eto polka. Na ney knigi.*  
 "This is a shelf. There are books on it."
- Он много рассказывал о вас.  
*On mnogo rasskazyval o vas.*  
 "He told a lot about you."
- Это хороший магазин. В нем можно купить японские товары.  
*Eto khoroshiy agazine. V nem mozhno kupit' yaponskiye tovary.*  
 "It is a good store. You can buy Japanese goods in it."

Let me give you more examples.

### For Example:

- Я думаю о маме.  
*Ya dumayu o mame.*  
 "I am thinking about my mother."

2. Банк находится на центральной *площади*.  
*Bank nakhoditsya na tsentral'noy ploshchadi.*  
"The bank is situated on the central square."
3. Он тебе рассказал о *проблеме*?  
*On tebe rasskazal o probleme?*  
"Did he tell you about a problem?"
4. Я очень волнуюсь о его *будущем*.  
*Ya ochen' volnuyus' o yego budushchem.*  
"I worry about his future very much."

### Language Tip

Today we studied several verbs: **представлять** (*predstavlyat'*), meaning "to imagine" or "to represent"; **загорать** (*zagorat'*), meaning "to sunbathe"; and **плавать** (*plavat'*), meaning "to swim."

Let's see how they conjugate in the present tense.

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Romanization</b>
Я	<i>ya</i>	представляю	<i>predstavlyayu</i>
Я	<i>ya</i>	загораю	<i>zagorayu</i>
Я	<i>ya</i>	плаваю	<i>plavayu</i>
Мы	<i>my</i>	представляем	<i>predstavlyayem</i>
Мы	<i>my</i>	загораем	<i>zagorayem</i>
Мы	<i>my</i>	плаваем	<i>plavayem</i>
Ты	<i>ty</i>	представляешь	<i>predstavlyayesh'</i>
Ты	<i>ty</i>	загораешь	<i>zagorayesh'</i>

Ты	ty	плаваешь	<i>plavayesh'</i>
Вы	vy	представляете	<i>predstavlyayete</i>
Вы	vy	загораете	<i>zagorayete</i>
Вы	vy	плаваете	<i>plavayete</i>
Он/Она/Оно	<i>on/ona/ono</i>	представляет	<i>predstavlyayet</i>
Он/Она/Оно	<i>on/ona/ono</i>	загорает	<i>zagorayet</i>
Он/Она/Оно	<i>on/ona/ono</i>	плавает	<i>plavayet</i>
Они	<i>oni</i>	представляют	<i>predstavlyayut</i>
Они	<i>oni</i>	загорают	<i>zagorayut</i>
Они	<i>oni</i>	плавают	<i>plavayut</i>

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Do You Know Where Russians Prefer to Vacation?

According to Russian legislation, the annual principal paid vacation's duration is twenty-eight calendar days. That is guaranteed by the government. Most people try to take the majority of annual vacation in summer, when they can go to the seaside or just enjoy resting at a summer cottage. The most popular seaside destinations for Russians include Turkey, Thailand, and Egypt. You can meet a lot of Russians in Pattaya, Sharm-el-sheikh, or Antalya. Other popular destinations include Crimea and the Ukraine, where the Black Sea is another destination of choice. Pastimes there include breathing the fresh mountain air and sampling the famous Crimean wine. Many people prefer to stay in Belarus in one of its famous health resorts. China is also popular for among Russians for shopping.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #12

## What Do Your Russian Relatives Do?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 14 Cultural Insight

# **12**

## RUSSIAN

1. ЛЕРА: Алекс, где работает твой старший брат?
2. АЛЕКС: Он работает в университете и преподает японский язык.
3. ЛЕРА: Ну тогда он, наверное, хорошо знает японские традиции.
4. АЛЕКС: Конечно, он каждый день читает различные книги про историю и культуру Японии.

## ROMANIZATION

1. LERA: Aleks, gde rabotayet tvoy starshiy brat?
2. ALEKS: On rabotayet v universitete i prepodayet yaponskiy yazyk.
3. LERA: Nu togda on, naverno, khorosho znayet yaponskiye traditsii.
4. ALEKS: Konechno, on kazhdyy den' chitayet razlichnyye knigi pro istoriyu i kul'tury Yaponii.

## ENGLISH

1. LERA: Alex, where does your elder brother work?
2. ALEX: He works at the university and teaches the Japanese language.
3. LERA: Well, then he probably knows Japanese traditions well.

CONT'D OVER

4. ALEX: Of course; every day, he reads a variety of books on the history and culture of Japan.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
японский	yaponskiy	Japanese	adjective	masculine
знать	znat'	to know	verb	
культура	kul'tura	culture	noun	feminine
различный	razlichnyy	various	adjective	masculine
история	istoriya	history	noun	feminine
день	den'	day	noun	masculine
каждый	kazhdyy	each, every	pronoun	masculine
язык	yazyk	tongue, language	noun	masculine
традиция	traditsiya	tradition	noun	feminine
работать	rabotat'	to work	verb	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Японские машины очень популярны в России.</b>  <i>Yaponskiye mashiny ochen' populyarny v Rossii.</i>            "Japanese cars are very popular in Russia."</p>	<p><b>Он знает куда идти?</b>  <i>On znayet kuda idti?</i>            "Does he know where to go?"</p>
<p><b>Я не знаю этот район.</b>  <i>Ya ne znayu etot rayon.</i>            "I don't know this area."</p>	<p><b>Ты его знаешь?</b>  <i>Ty yego znayesh'?</i>            "Do you know him?"</p>

<p><b>Мне нравятся культура и традиции Японии.</b>  <i>Mne nnavyatsya kul'tura i traditsii Yaponii.</i></p> <p>"I like Japanese culture and traditions."</p>	<p><b>В этом супермаркете можно купить различные товары.</b>  <i>V etom supermarkete mozhno kupit' razlichnyye tovary.</i></p> <p>"You can buy various goods in this supermarket."</p>
<p><b>Я знаю много реальных историй о привидениях.</b>  <i>Ya znayu mnogo real'nykh istoriy o privideniyakh.</i></p> <p>"I know a lot of true stories about ghosts."</p>	<p><b>Что ты знаешь об истории Москвы?</b>  <i>Chto ty znayesh' ob istorii Moskvy?</i></p> <p>"What do you know about the history of Moscow?"</p>
<p><b>В течение дня я работаю в аптеке.</b>  <i>V techeniye dnya ya rabotayu v apteke.</i></p> <p>"During the day, I work at a pharmacy."</p>	<p><b>Я убираю в своей комнате каждый день.</b>  <i>Ya ubirayu v svoey komnate kazhdyy den'.</i></p> <p>"I clean my room every day."</p>
<p><b>Он весь день сидит дома.</b>  <i>On ves' den' sidit doma.</i></p> <p>"He's been sitting at home all day."</p>	<p><b>Какой странный день!</b>  <i>Kakoy stranny den'!</i></p> <p>"What a strange day!"</p>
<p><b>Каждый человек хочет быть счастливым.</b>  <i>Kazhdyy chelovek khochet byt' schastlivym.</i></p> <p>"Every person wants to be happy."</p>	<p><b>Русский язык очень сложный.</b>  <i>Russkiy yazyk ochen' slozhnyy.</i></p> <p>"The Russian language is very difficult."</p>
<p><b>Русский - мой родной язык.</b>  <i>Russkiy - moy rodnoy yazyk.</i></p> <p>"Russian is my native language."</p>	<p><b>Традиция чаепития в России насчитывает длинную историю.</b>  <i>Traditsiya chayepitiya v Rossii naschityvayet dlinnuyu istoriyu.</i></p> <p>"The tea drinking tradition in Russia has a long history."</p>
<p><b>Мне нужно работать в воскресенье.</b>  <i>Mne nuzhno rabotat' v voskresen'ye.</i></p> <p>"I need to work on Sunday."</p>	<p><b>Магазин сегодня не работает.</b>  <i>Magazin segodnya ne rabotayet.</i></p> <p>"The store is closed today."</p>

---

## Где она работает?

*Gde ona rabotayet?*

"Where does she work?"

---

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### история (*istoriya*)

The first key word for this lesson is a feminine noun, **история** (*istoriya*), which we can translate as "history." This word has several meanings.

The first meaning is "history," a chronological record of past events, times, and developments. It has the same meaning as the English word "history."

#### For Example:

1. Я интересуюсь всемирной историей.  
*Ya interesuyus' vseirnoy istoriyey.*  
"I am interested in world history."
2. Я читаю книгу о истории Киевской Руси.  
*Ya chitayu knigu o istorii Kiyevskoy Rusi.*  
"I am reading a book about the history of Kievskaya Rus'."

The word "history" also means a school discipline.

#### For Example:

1. Иван сейчас на уроке истории.  
*Ivan seychas na uroke istorii.*  
"Ivan is in the history class now."

The third meaning of this word is "a story" or "narrative." We often use it in the expression **рассказать историю**, meaning "to tell a story."

#### For Example:



1. Дети любят друг другу рассказывать страшные истории.  
*Deti lyubyat drug drugu rasskazyvat' strashnyye istorii.*  
"Children like to tell each other scary stories."
2. Она рассказала историю о том, как встретила свою любовь.  
*Ona rasskazala istoriyu o tom, kak vstretila svoyu lyubov'.*  
"She told a story about how she met her love."

### **ЯЗЫК (yazyk)**

The next key word for this lesson is a masculine noun, **ЯЗЫК (yazyk)**, which we can translate as "language." This word has two main meanings that people widely use in Russian. The first meaning is "language," a method of communication between people: for example, Russian, French, body language, and sign language.

Another meaning of this word is "tongue," a part of the body. Let me give you some examples.

#### **For Example:**

1. Я учу японский язык.  
*Ya uchu yaponskiy yazyk.*  
"I am studying the Japanese language."
2. Доктор: Покажите пожалуйста ваш язык.  
*Doktor: Pokazhite pozhaluysta vash yazyk.*  
"A doctor: Please show me your tongue."

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson Is the Accusative Case.**

**Конечно, он каждый день читает различные книги про историю и культуру Японии.**

*Konechno, on kazhdyy den' chitayet razlichnyye knigi pro istoriyu i kul'tury Yaponii.*

**"Of course, every day he reads a variety of books on the history and culture of Japan."**

---

In this lesson, we will start to learn about the accusative case. It is one of the simplest cases in

the Russian language, as you don't need to remember a lot of new endings of nouns. In this lesson, we will study one of three cases of accusative case usage: with the direct object.

In the Russian language, we use the accusative case when we want:

- to show the object of an action (a direct object). It answers the questions **Кого?** (*Kogo?*), meaning "Whom?" and **Что?** (*Chto?*), meaning "What?"

For example, in the sentence Я читаю книгу (*Ya chitayu knigu*), meaning "I am reading a book," a book is an object that the subject, "I," acts on. It answers the question "What?": I read what? a book. In the sentence Я люблю брата (*Ya lyublyu brata*), meaning "I love my brother." I love whom? My brother.

- to express the destination of a movement.

- to express the passage of time or frequency of an action in a certain period of time.

When we want to show the object of an action, we don't need to use any preposition.

Now let's see how to make the accusative case forms of nouns.

For the accusative case, it is very important to determine whether the subject is an animate noun (people, animals, other alive beings) or an inanimate one.

The accusative case forms of masculine nouns depend on whether this noun is animate or inanimate. The endings of all inanimate nouns are similar to the nominative case. The endings of all masculine animate nouns will be the next topic.

- if a noun ends in a consonant, you should add **-а** to such consonant.

**For Example:**

<b>Nominative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Accusative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
врач	<i>vrach</i>	врача	<i>vracha</i>	"doctor"

**-й** and **-ь** will change to **-я**.

**For Example:**

<b>Nominative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Accusative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
герой	<i>geroy</i>	героя	<i>geroya</i>	"hero"
учитель	<i>uchitel'</i>	учителя	<i>uchitelya</i>	"teacher"

**-ий** will change to **-ия**.

**For Example:**

<b>Nominative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Accusative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
гений	<i>geniy</i>	гения	<i>geniya</i>	"genius"

**For Example:**

1. Иван читает журнал.  
*Ivan chitayet zhurnal.*  
"Ivan is reading a magazine."  
Here, the noun журнал, meaning "magazine," is an inanimate noun ending in a consonant; that's why it will not change its ending.
2. Я вижу учителя.  
*Ya vizhu uchitelya.*  
"I see a teacher."  
Here, the noun учитель, meaning "teacher," is animate; that's why we changed the ending to -я.
3. Я люблю этот словарь.  
*Ya lyublyu etot slovar'.*  
"I like this dictionary."

Let's take a look at the grammar structure one more time.

inanimate nouns = nominative case.

animate nouns:

[consonant] - [consonant] +-a

-й - change to -я

-ь - change to -я

-ий - change to -ия

The endings of feminine nouns do not depend on whether the noun is animate or inanimate, and we should change it as follows:

**-a to -y**

**For Example:**

---

<b>Nominative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Accusative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
книга	<i>kniga</i>	книгу	<i>knigu</i>	"book"
полка	<i>polka</i>	полку	<i>polku</i>	"shelf"
газета	<i>gazeta</i>	газету	<i>gazetu</i>	"newspaper"

**-я to -ю**

**For Example:**

---

<b>Nominative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Accusative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
семья	<i>sem'ya</i>	семью	<i>sem'yu</i>	"family"
станция	<i>stantsiya</i>	станцию	<i>stantsiyu</i>	"station"

---

-Ь does not change

For Example:

---

<b>Nominative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Accusative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
НОЧЬ	<i>noch'</i>	НОЧЬ	<i>noch'</i>	"night"
МЫШЬ	<i>mysh'</i>	МЫШЬ	<i>mysh'</i>	"mouse"

---

-ия to -ию

For Example:

---

<b>Nominative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>Accusative Case</b>	<b>Romanization</b>	<b>"English"</b>
Италия	<i>Italiya</i>	Италию	<i>Italiyu</i>	"Italy"

---

For Example:

1. Мама читает *газету*.  
*Mama chitayet gazetu.*  
"Mom is reading a newspaper." (What? A newspaper).
2. Я увидел *мышь*.  
*Ya uvidel mysh'.*  
"I saw a mouse." ( I saw what? A mouse).
3. Он купил *книгу*.  
*On kupil knigu.*  
"He bought a book." (I bought what? A book).
4. Она ищет *аудиторию*.  
*Ona ishchet auditoriyu.*  
"She is looking for an auditorium." (She is looking for what? An auditorium).

Neuter nouns don't change their endings at all; they are the same as in the nominative case.

**For Example:**

1. Он пишет *письмо*.  
*On pishet pis'mo.*  
"He is writing a letter."
2. Он разбил *окно*.  
*On razbil okno.*  
"He broke a window."

Let's compare noun endings in the nominative, prepositional, and accusative cases.

Gender	Nominative	Prepositional	Accusative
<b>Masculine</b>	-consonant	-е	-а
	-й	-е	-я
	-ь	-е	-я
	-ий	-ие	-ия
<b>Feminine</b>	-а	-е	-у
	-я	-е	-ю
	-ь	-и	-ь
	-ия	-ии	-ию
<b>Neuter</b>	-о	-е	-о
	-е	-е	-е
	-ие	-ии	-ие

Let me give you some examples comparing the three cases that we have already studied.

1. Это книга.

*Eto kniga.*

"This is a book." (The word "book" is in the nominative case.)

2. Я читаю книгу.

*Ya chitayu knigu.*

"I am reading a book." (It is in the accusative case, showing that the book is an object of my action. I read what? A book.)

3. Книга на полке.

*Kniga na polke.*

"The book is on the shelf." (It is in the prepositional case, denoting the location of my book. We should put the word expressing location is полка (*polka*), meaning "a shelf," in the prepositional case. In this sentence, we used the preposition на because the shelf is an open space place.)

### Language Tip

Today we studied several verbs: преподавать (*prepodavat'*), meaning "to teach"; работать (*rabotat'*), meaning "to work"; and знать (*znat'*), meaning "to know."

Let's see how they conjugate in the present tense.

Pronoun	Verb	Romanization
Я (ya)	преподаю работаю знаю	<i>prepodayu</i> <i>rabotayu</i> <i>znayu</i>
Мы (my)	преподаём работаем знаем	<i>prepodayom</i> <i>rabotayem</i> <i>znayem</i>
Ты (ty)	преподаёшь работаешь знаешь	<i>prepodayosh'</i> <i>rabotayesh'</i> <i>znayesh'</i>

<i>Вы вы</i>	<b>преподаёте работаете знаете</b>	<i>prepodayote rabotayete znayete</i>
<i>Он (он) Она (она) Оно (оно)</i>	<b>преподаёт работает знает</b>	<i>prepodayot rabotayet znayet</i>
<i>Они (они)</i>	<b>преподают работают знают</b>	<i>prepodayut rabotayut znayut</i>

There are some consonants in Russian that form pairs: voice and voiceless.

<b>Voiced</b>	-б [-b]	-в [-v]	-г [-g]	-д [-d]	-з [-z]	-ж [-zh]
<b>Voiceless</b>	-п [-p]	-ф [-f]	-к [-k]	-т [-t]	-с [-s]	-ш [-sh]

These pairs are very important as depending on their position in a word, their pronunciation can change from a voiced to a voiceless consonant and vice versa.

If a noun ends in a voiced consonant, we should pronounce this consonant as its voiceless pair.

### For Example:

We pronounce the word **друг**, meaning "friend," as [druk]. The letters **-г** and **-к** form a pair, where **-г** is voiced and **-к** is voiceless. The voiced consonant **-г** has a word-final position, which is why we pronounce it as **-к**.

We pronounce the word **город**, meaning "city," as [gorot]. The letters **-д** and **-т** also form a pair, where **-д** is voiced and **-т** is voiceless. The voiced consonant **-д** has a word-final position, which is why we pronounce it as **-т**.

Let me give more examples.

### For Example:



1. лев [lef], meaning "lion"
2. клуб [klup], meaning "club"
3. рассказ [rasskas], meaning "story"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Russian Demographics

---

In accordance with the data of the Federal State Statistics Service, the population of the Russian Federation is approximately 143 million people. Fifty-three percent of the population is women, whereas men amount to only forty-six percent. Even though family still remains as a very important social institution, Russians have started to divorce more often, if we compare the numbers with the previous decade. Nowadays, more than fifty percent of registered marriages break. It's really an awful number. Among the main reasons are dissatisfaction with the financial situation of the family, alcoholism, an inability to build strong relationships because of the young age of couple, and adultery. The main age for marriage for women is from eighteen until twenty-four and for men from twenty-five to thirty-two years old.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #13

## Going to the Ballet in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# 13

## RUSSIAN

1. ЛЕРА: Алекс, ты не хочешь сходить на балет «Лебединое озеро»?
2. АЛЕКС: Хочу, а когда?
3. ЛЕРА: В эту среду, вечером.
4. АЛЕКС: Очень жаль, но в эту среду я не могу. Я иду на семинар по менеджменту. Может, в пятницу?
5. ЛЕРА: В пятницу мне нужно работать допоздна, так как мой босс уезжает в командировку. Давай тогда в субботу?
6. АЛЕКС: Отлично! Давай!

## ROMANIZATION

1. LERA: Aleks, ty ne khochesh' skhodit' na balet «Lebedinoye ozero»?
2. ALEKS: Khochu, a kogda?
3. LERA: V etu sredu, vecherom.
4. ALEKS: Ochen' zhal', no v etu sredu ya ne mogu. Ya idu na seminar po menedzhmentu. Mozhet, v pyatnitsu?
5. LERA: V pyatnitsu mne nuzhno rabotat' dopozdna, tak kak moy boss uyezzhayet v komandirovku. Davay togda v subbotu?
6. ALEKS: Otlichno! Davay!

## ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. LERA: Alex, do you want to go to the ballet "Swan Lake?"
2. ALEX: I want to, but when?
3. LERA: This Wednesday, in the evening.
4. ALEX: It's such a pity, but I can't on Wednesday. I'm going to a seminar on management. What about Friday?
5. LERA: I need to work late into the night on Friday because my boss is going to leave on a business trip. So, let's go on Saturday?
6. ALEX: Great! Ok!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
семинар	seminar	seminar, workshop	noun	masculine
балет	balet	ballet	noun	masculine
мочь	moch'	can; to be able to	verb	
пятница	pyatnitsa	Friday	noun	feminine
очень жаль	ochen' zhal'	It's such a pity.	phrase	
допоздна	dopozdna	far into the night, till late	adverb	
уезжать	uyezzhat'	to leave, go away (by transport)	verb	

суббота	subbota	Saturday	noun	feminine
командировка	komandirovka	business trip	noun	feminine
давай	davay	let's	particle	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Иван любит ходить на разные семинары.</b> <i>Ivan lyubit khodit' na raznyye seminary.</i></p> <p>"Ivan likes to go to different workshops."</p>	<p><b>Ты был на балете “Жизель”?</b> <i>Ty byl na balete "Zhizel"?</i></p> <p>"Have you been to the ballet 'Giselle'?"</p>
<p><b>Российский балет известен по всему миру.</b> <i>Rossiyskiy balet izvesten po vsemu miru.</i></p> <p>"Russian ballet is famous worldwide."</p>	<p><b>Мы не можем так работать.</b> <i>My ne mozhem tak rabotat'.</i></p> <p>"We can't work like this."</p>
<p><b>Ты можешь мне помочь?</b> <i>Ty mozhesh' mne pomoch'?</i></p> <p>"Can you help me?" (informal)</p>	<p><b>Что ты делаешь в пятницу вечером?</b> <i>Chto ty delayesh' v pyatnitsu vecherom?</i></p> <p>"What are you doing Friday night?"</p>
<p><b>Вы свободны в пятницу вечером?</b> <i>Vy svobodny v pyatnitsu vyecherom?</i></p> <p>"Are you free on Friday evening?"</p>	<p><b>Очень жаль, что ты не можешь прийти на вечеринку.</b> <i>Ochen' zhal', chto ty ne mozhesh' priyti na vecherinku.</i></p> <p>"It's such a pity that you can't come to the party."</p>
<p><b>Она часто работает допоздна.</b> <i>Ona chasto rabotayet dopozdna.</i></p> <p>"She often works far into the night."</p>	<p><b>Когда ты уезжаешь в Москву?</b> <i>Kogda ty uyezzhayesh' v Moskvu?</i></p> <p>"When are you leaving for Moscow?"</p>

<p><b>Жаль, что мне уже нужно уезжать.</b> <i>Zhal', chto mne uzhe nuzhno uyezzhat'.</i></p> <p>"It's a pity I have to leave already."</p>	<p><b>В следующую субботу приезжает моя мама.</b> <i>V sleduyushchuyu subbotu priyeyzhayet moya mama.</i></p> <p>"Next Saturday my mom is coming."</p>
<p><b>Сегодня - суббота.</b> <i>Segodnya - subbota.</i></p> <p>"Today is Saturday."</p>	<p><b>В субботу мы идём в кино.</b> <i>V subbotu my idyom v kino.</i></p> <p>"On Saturday, we're going to the cinema."</p>
<p><b>Завтра я уезжаю в командировку в Киев.</b> <i>Zavtra ya uyezzhayu v komandirovku v Kiyev.</i></p> <p>"Tomorrow I am leaving on a business trip to Kiev."</p>	<p><b>Давай обедать!</b> <i>Davay obedat'!</i></p> <p>"Let's have lunch!" (informal)</p>

**Давай встретимся в одиннадцать часов.**

*Davay vstretimsya v odinnadtsat' chasov.*

"Let's meet at eleven o'clock."

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### Давай (*Davay*)

The first key word for this lesson is *Давай (davay)*, or *Давайте (davayte)* (polite or plural form), which can be translated as "let's." This word has several uses. Firstly, in Russian, the word *Давай (davay)* is used to make a suggestion to someone to do something together. In this case, the main verb (the action that is suggested) is put in the first person plural form and in the future tense.

For example:

1. Лена, давай посмотрим фильм "Операция "Ы"?"  
*Lena, davay posmotrim fil'm "Operatsiya "Y"?"*  
"Lena, let's watch the movie 'Operation Y.'"

2. Давай погуляем в парке?  
*Davay pogulyayet v parke?*  
"Let's take a walk in the park."
  
3. Оксана, давайте завтра сходим в театр? (polite form)  
*Oksana, davayte zavtra skhodim v teatr?*  
"Oksana, let's go to the theater tomorrow."

Secondly, the words *Давай* and *Давайте* (polite or plural form) are used when we want to offer our help. These can be translated into English as "Let..."

For example:

1. Давайте я помогу. (polite)  
*Davayte ya pomogu.*  
"Let me help you."
  
2. Давай я возьму твои тяжелые сумки.  
*Davay ya voz'mu tvoi tyazhelyye sumki.*  
"Let me take your heavy bags."
  
3. Михаил Петрович, давайте я соберу документы. (polite)  
*Mikhail Petrovich, davayte ya soberu dokumenty.*  
"Mikhail Petrovich, let me gather the documents."

We also use the word *Давай* (*davay*) or *Давайте* (*davayte*) to show consent for a suggestion that was made.

For example:

1. Давай  
купим томатный сок?  
*Давай!*  
*Davay kupim tomatnyy sok?*  
*Davay!*  
"Let's buy tomato juice." "Ok!"

2. Какой красивый фотоальбом. Давай купим?

*Давай!*

*Kakoy krasivyy fotoal'bom. Davay kupim?*

*Davay!*

"What a beautiful photo album. Let's buy it." "Ok!"

## **уезжать (Uyezhat')**

The second key word is *uyezhat'* (*уезжать*), which can be translated as "to leave." This word means that someone is leaving a place using any type of vehicle, but not by foot. It can be a train, a bus, a car, etc.

For example:

1. Завтра он уезжает в село.  
*Zavtra on uyezzhayet v selo.*  
"Tomorrow, he will leave for the village."
2. Когда ты уезжаешь в Санкт-Петербург?  
*Kogda ty uyezzhayesh' v Sankt-Peterburg?*  
"When are you going to St. Petersburg?"

## **GRAMMAR**

**The Focus of this Lesson is Using the Accusative Case to Point Out the Direction of Movement, as well as the Difference Between the Accusative and the Prepositional Case**

**Алекс, ты не хочешь сходить на балет «Лебединое озеро»?**

***Aleks, ty ne khochesh' skhodit' na balet «Lebedinoye ozero»?***

**"Alex, do you want to go to the ballet "Swan Lake"?"**

---

In this lesson, we'll continue to learn about the accusative case. The accusative case is used not only to show the object of an action (direct object), but also to express the destination of movement. The main question in this case is *Куда?* (*Kuda?*), meaning "where?" or "where to?" It's used when we want to point out the direction or aim of movement, and it's usually



used with verbs of motion.

For example:

1. Я еду в *Москву*.  
*Ya yedu v Moskvu.*  
"I'm going to Moscow."
2. Самолёт летит в *Америку*.  
*Samolyot letit v Ameriku.*  
"A plane is flying in America."
3. Иван пошёл в *магазин*.  
*Ivan poshol v magazin.*  
"Ivan went to the store."
4. Я хочу поехать в *Китай*.  
*Ya khochu poyekhat' v Kitay.*  
"I want to go to China."
5. Анна хочет поступить в *университет*.  
*Anna khochet postupit' v universitet.*  
"Ann wants to enter a university."

In previous lessons, you've learned about the prepositional case, which also answers the question Где? (*Gde?*), meaning "where?" What's the difference between the prepositional case and the accusative? It's really very simple. The prepositional case expresses the location of something or somebody, whereas the accusative case indicates the direction (place) toward which something or someone is moving. Let's compare.

1. Андрей в *школе*.  
*Andrey v shkole.*  
"Andrew is at school."

In this sentence, we're using the prepositional case because we are expressing the location of Andrew.

1. Андрей идёт в школу.  
*Andrey idyot v shkolu.*  
"Andrew is going to school."

In this sentence, the word "school" was put in the accusative case because "school" is the aim of Andrew's movement, or his direction.

Let me give you more examples of the usage of the prepositional and accusative cases:

### The Prepositional Case

---

1. Иван в банке.  
*Ivan v banke.*  
"Ivan is in the bank."
2. Книга на полке.  
*Kniga na polke.*  
"The book is on the shelf."

In these two sentences, we're just stating a fact, which is that somebody or something is located (situated) in a specific place.

### The Accusative Case

---

1. Иван идёт в банк.  
*Ivan idyot v bank.*  
"Ivan is going to the bank."
2. Положи книгу на полку.  
*Polozhi knigu na polku.*  
"Put the book on the shelf."

In these two sentences, we're pointing out the direction in which someone is moving or where

something should be put or moved. If the prepositional case expresses that an object is already in some location, the accusative case indicates the destination or goal of motion.

For example:

1. Где работает Антон Петрович?  
Он работает в библиотеке. (Prepositional case)  
*Gde rabotayet Anton Petrovich?*  
*On rabotayet v biblioteke.*  
"Where does Anton Petrovich work?"  
"He works in the library."
2. Куда идёт Анна?  
Она идёт в библиотеку. (Accusative case)  
*Kuda idot Anna?*  
*Ona idyot v biblioteku.*  
"Where is Anna going?"  
"She's going to the library."
3. Где учатся Наталья и Артём?  
Они учатся в университете. (Prepositional case)  
*Gde uchatsya Natal'ya i Artyom?*  
*Oni uchatsya v universitete.*  
"Where are Natalia and Artem studying?"  
"They're studying at the university."
4. Куда идут Наталья и Артём?  
Они идут в университет. (Accusative case)  
*Kuda idut Natal'ya i Artyom?*  
*Oni idut v universitet.*  
"Where are Natalia and Artem going?"  
"They are going to the university."
5. Завтра я иду на экскурсию, а ты? (Accusative case)  
*Zavtra ya idu na ekskursiyu, a ty?*  
"Tomorrow, I'm going on an excursion. And you?"

6. Я сейчас на экскурсии, перезвоню позже. (Prepositional case)

*Ya seychas na ekskursii, perezvonyu pozzhe.*

"I'm out on an excursion now. I'll call you back later."

There are some adverbs that can help you determine what case to use: prepositional or accusative. If you want to say that something or someone is situated *здесь (zdes')* - "here," *там (tam)* - "there," *справа (sprava)* - "on the right," *слева (sleva)* - "on the left," *дома (doma)* - "at home," etc., please use the prepositional case.

If you want to express that something or someone is moving *сюда (syuda)* - "here," *туда (туда)* - "there," *направо (napravo)* - "to the right," *налево (nalevo)* - "to the left," *домой (domoy)* - "home," etc., please use the accusative case.

## Language Expansion

To express the day of the week on which an action is performed, please use the following forms:

<b>Когда?</b> <i>(Kogda?)</i>	<b>When?</b>	<b>Когда?</b> <i>(Kogda?)</i>	<b>When?</b>
<i>в понедельник</i> <i>v ponedel'nik</i>	"on Monday"	<i>в пятницу</i> <i>v pyatnitsu</i>	"on Friday"
<i>во вторник</i> <i>vo vtornik</i>	"on Tuesday"	<i>в субботу</i> <i>v subbotu</i>	"on Saturday"
<i>в среду</i> <i>v sredu</i>	"on Wednesday"	<i>в воскресенье</i> <i>v voskresen'ye</i>	"on Sunday"
<i>в четверг</i> <i>v chetverg</i>	"on Thursday"		

For example:

1. В эту среду я ходил в бассейн.  
*V etu sredu ya khodil v basseyn.*  
"This Wednesday, I went to the pool."
2. Ты знаешь, что в пятницу будет совещание?  
*Ty znayesh', chto v pyatnitsu budet soveshchaniye?*  
"Do you know that there will be a meeting on Friday?"
3. Ты не помнишь, Андрей прилетает в субботу или в воскресенье?  
*Ty ne pomnish', Andrey priletayet v subbotu ili v voskresen'ye?*  
"Do you remember if Andrey is arriving on Saturday or on Sunday?"

In our dialog, there is a verb: мочь (*moch'*) - "to be able to, can." Let's see how it conjugates in the present tense.

Pronoun	Verb	Pronoun	Verb
<i>Я</i> <i>ya</i> "I"	<i>могу</i> <i>mozhu</i> "can"	<i>Мы</i> <i>my</i> "we"	<i>можем</i> <i>mozhem</i> "can"
<i>Ты</i> <i>ty</i> "you"	<i>можешь</i> <i>mozhesh'</i> "can"	<i>Вы</i> <i>vy</i> "you" (pl)	<i>можете</i> <i>mozhete</i> "can"
<i>Он / Она / Оно</i> <i>on / ona / ono</i> "he" / "she" / "it"	<i>может</i> <i>mozhet</i> "can"	<i>Они</i> <i>oni</i> "they"	<i>могут</i> <i>mogut</i> "can"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Russian Ballet

Do you know that Russian ballet has a very long history and is now considered to be a significant part of Russian culture? The first ballet performance was held in the seventeenth

century, and the first school of ballet was opened in the 1740s in St. Petersburg. From that time, Russia produced a lot of world-famous ballerinas, such as Mathilde Kschessinska, Galina Ulanova, Anna Pavlova, and Maya Plisetskaya. Russian ballet companies, such as the Mariinsky Ballet and the Bolshoi Ballet, often give concerts in other countries and are warmly welcomed by all spectators. There are also a lot of ballet schools for both children and adults, so ballet has become a part of people's culture. Almost every day, the *Mariinsky Theatre* has ballet performances, among which are: *Romeo and Juliet*, *Cinderella*, *Giselle*, *The Little Humpbacked Horse*, *Swan Lake*, *Sleeping Beauty*, etc. The tickets prices vary from 1,200 to 5,000 rubles.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #14

## Let's Go To A Russian Exhibition!

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# 14

## RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Лера, у тебя есть фотоаппарат?
2. ЛЕРА: Нет, у меня нет фотоаппарата. Но, возможно, у Насти есть.
3. АЛЕКС: Я недавно узнал, что сейчас проходит международная художественная выставка. Говорят, там очень интересно. Давай сходим?
4. ЛЕРА: Конечно давай!

## ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Lera, u tebya yes't fotoapparat?
2. LERA: Net, u menya net fotoapparata. No, vozmozhno, u Nastii yes't.
3. ALEKS: Ya nedavno uznal, chto seychas prokhodit mezhdunarodnaya khudozhestvennaya vystavka. Govoryat, tam ochen' interesno. Davay skhodim?
4. LERA: Konechno davay!

## ENGLISH

1. ALEX: Lera, do you have a camera?
2. LERA: No, I don't have a camera, but maybe Nastia has one.

CONT'D OVER



3. ALEX: I recently found out that an international art exhibition is happening now. They say it's very interesting. Shall we go?

4. LERA: Of course!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
фотоаппарат	fotoapparat	camera	noun	masculine
возможно	vozmozhno	maybe, probably	adverb	
проходить	prokhodit'	to take place, to pass, to go	verb	
международны й	mezhdunarodny y	international	adjective	masculine
художественны й	khudozhestvenn yy	art	adjective	masculine
говорят	govoryat	they say	verb	
выставка	vystavka	exhibition, exposition	noun	
интересно	interesno	interesting; I wonder	adverb; interjection	
узнать	uznat'	to recognize, to find out	verb	
недавно	nedavno	recently	adverb	no

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Чей это фотоаппарат?</b>  <i>Chey eto fotoapparat?</i></p> <p>"Whose camera is this?"</p>	<p><b>На улице пасмурно. Возможно скоро пойдёт дождь.</b>  <i>Na ulitse pasmurno. Vozmozhno skoro poydot dozhd'.</i></p> <p>"It's overcast outside. It will probably start to rain soon."</p>
<p><b>В этом году в Москве пройдёт международная конференция по праву.</b>  <i>V etom godu v Moskve proidyot mezhdunarodnaya konferentsiya po pravu.</i></p> <p>"This year an international conference on law will take place in Moscow."</p>	<p><b>В Шанхае открылась художественная выставка картин Айвазовского.</b>  <i>V Shankhaye otkrylas' khudozhestvennaya vystavka kartin Ayvazovskogo.</i></p> <p>"An art exhibition of paintings by Aivazovsky opened in Shanghai."</p>
<p><b>Говорят, фильм "Аватар" - самый дорогой в истории кино.</b>  <i>Govoryat, fil'm "Avatar" - samyy dorogoy v istorii kino.</i></p> <p>"They say the film "Avatar" is the most expensive in the history of cinema."</p>	<p><b>Каждый год в Японии проходит выставка роботов.</b>  <i>Kazhdyy god v Yaponii prokhodit vystavka robotov.</i></p> <p>"The exhibition of robots takes place every year in Japan."</p>
<p><b>Ты была на выставке цветов в ботаническом саду?</b>  <i>Ty byla na vystavkye cvetov v botanicheskom sadu?</i></p> <p>"Have you been to the flower exhibition in the botanical garden?"</p>	<p><b>Ты даже не представляешь, как это интересно!</b>  <i>Ty dazhe ne predstavlyayesh', kak eto interesno!</i></p> <p>"You can't even imagine how interesting it is!"</p>
<p><b>Антон, ты узнал номер телефона Серёжи?</b>  <i>Anton, ty uznal nomer telefona Seryozhi?</i></p> <p>"Anton, did you find out the phone number of Serge?"</p>	<p><b>Я узнала его голос.</b>  <i>Ya uznala yego golos.</i></p> <p>"I recognized his voice."</p>

**Иван недавно купил машину.**

*Ivan nedavno kupil mashinu.*

"Ivan recently bought a car."

**Да, я был там недавно.**

*Da, ya byl tam nedavno.*

Yes, I have been there recently.

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### узнать

The first key word for this lesson is the verb *узнать* (*uznat'*), which can be translated as "to find out" or "to get to know." This verb is used when we want to point out that we have received or discovered some facts or information that we didn't know before.

For example:

1. Ты узнал когда прилетает самолёт?  
*Ty uznal kogda priletayet samolyot?*  
"Did you find out when the plane arrives?"
2. Она узнала, как готовят русский борщ.  
*Ona uznala kak gotovyat russkiy borshch.*  
"She found out how Russian *borscht* is cooked."
3. Он случайно узнал, что у него есть сын.  
*On sluchayno uznal, chto u nego yest' syn.*  
"He happened to come to know that he has a son."

The second meaning of this verb is "to recognize." We use this word when we want to express that we find something familiar in a person, creature, or thing, as if something or someone was previously seen or known to us, but we'd forgotten about it and just now remembered again.

For example:

1. Я не сразу узнал Алексея Петровича, так как он сильно постарел.  
*Ya ne srazu uznal Alekseya Petrovicha, tak kak on sil'no postarel.*  
"I did not recognize Alexei Petrovich immediately, as he had aged badly."

2. Вы узнали меня? Мы вместе летели в Москву 2 года назад.  
*Vy uznali menya? My vmeste leteli v Moskvu 2 goda nazad.*  
"Did you recognize me? We flew together to Moscow two years ago."

### **проходить (*prokhodit'*)**

The next key word for this lesson is the verb **проходить** (*prokhodit'*), which has many meanings and therefore can be translated in many ways.

When talking about events (conferences, exhibitions, festivals, official meetings, etc.) we use this verb with the meaning of "to take place" or "to be held."

For example:

1. Следующие олимпийские игры пройдут в Токио.  
*Sleduyushchiye olimpiyskiye igry proydut v Tokio.*  
"The next Olympic Games will be held in Tokyo."
2. В Сочи прошла встреча Медведева и Лукашенко.  
*V Sochi proshla vstrecha Medvedeva i Lukashenko.*  
"The meeting of Medvedev and Lukashenko took place in Sochi."
3. Завтрашнее совещание будет проходить в кабинете директора.  
*Zavtrashneye soveshchaniye budet prokhodit' v kabinete direktora.*  
"Tomorrow's meeting will be held at the director's office."
4. Бразильский карнавал проходит каждый год в Рио-де-Жанейро.  
*Brazil'skiy karnaval prokhodit kazhdyy god v Rio-de-Zhaneyro.*  
"The Brazilian Carnival takes place every year in Rio de Janeiro."
5. Никита, как прошли твои экзамены в университет?  
*Nikita, kak proshli tvoi ekzameny v universitet?*  
"Nikita, how were your exams for university?"

## **GRAMMAR**

## The Focus of this Lesson Is the Genitive Case

Нет, у меня нет фотоаппарата. Но, возможно, у Нasti есть.

*Net, u menya net fotoapparata. No, vozmozhno, u Nasti yest'.*

"No, I don't have a camera, but maybe Nastia has one."

In this lesson, you'll start to learn about the genitive case. It's one of the most difficult cases in Russian, as it has many usages. The main function of the genitive case is to express ownership and show possession. In English, we use an apostrophe with the letter [s] or the preposition "of." The questions in the genitive case are *Koro?* (*Kogo?*) and *Черо?* (*Chego?*), which, depending on the situation, can be translated as "of whom?" or "of what?" In other words, if you need to indicate who the owner of something is or answer the question "whose?" you should use the genitive case.

Let's take a look at the formation of nouns in the genitive case.

Masculine nouns will have the following endings:

- If it is in singular form and the stem ends in a consonant, you need to add the ending [a] to the consonant. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Genitive case noun
<i>bank</i> (банк)	"bank"	<i>banka</i> (банка)
<i>stol</i> (стол)	"table"	<i>stola</i> (стола)
<i>brat</i> (брат)	"brother"	<i>brata</i> (брата)

- [й] and [ь] change to [я]. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Genitive case noun
<i>muzeu</i> (музей)	"museum"	<i>muzeuya</i> (музея)
<i>slovar'</i> (словарь)	"dictionary"	<i>slovarya</i> (словаря)
<i>pisatel'</i> (писатель)	"writer"	<i>pisatelya</i> (писателя)

- [ий] changes to [ия]. For example: **санаторий** (*sanatoriy*), which means "health resort," becomes **санатория** (*sanatoriya*).

Feminine nouns will have the following endings:

- [а] changes to [ы]. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Genitive case noun
<i>voda</i> (вода)	"water"	<i>vody</i> (воды)
<i>sestra</i> (сестра)	"sister"	<i>sestry</i> (сестры)
<i>komnata</i> (комната)	"room"	<i>komnaty</i> (комнаты)

- [я] and [ь] changes to [и]. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Genitive case noun
<i>tetrad'</i> (тетрадь )	"notebook"	<i>tetradi</i> (тетради)
<i>ploshchad'</i> (площадь)	"square"	<i>ploshchadi</i> (площади)
<i>sem'ya</i> (семья)	"family"	<i>sem'i</i> (семьи)

- [ия] changes to [ии]. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Genitive case noun
<i>Italiya</i> (Италия)	"Italy"	<i>Italii</i> (Италии)
<i>auditoriya</i> (аудитория)	"auditorium"	<i>auditorii</i> (аудитории)

There are some exceptions to this rule. Please remember that if the stem of a feminine noun ends in [-г, -к, -х, -ж, -ш], even if it ends in [а], please add [и] instead of [ы]. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Genitive case noun
<i>kniga</i> (книга)	"book"	<i>knigi</i> (книги)

<i>devochka</i> (девочка)	"girl"	<i>devochki</i> (девочки)
<i>starukha</i> (старуха)	"old woman"	<i>starukhi</i> (старухи)

Please note that masculine nouns ending in [а] or [я] will have the endings [ы] and [и] respectively. These are exceptional nouns, such as *папа* (*papa*) "father," *дядя* (*dyadya*) "uncle," and *слуга* (*sluga*) "servant." Please see Lesson 2 for more about these nouns, which follow the rules for feminine nouns. For example:

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Genitive case noun</b>
<i>папа</i> (папа)	"father"	<i>папу</i> (папы)
<i>дядя</i> (дядя)	"uncle"	<i>дяди</i> (дяди)
<i>слуга</i> (слуга)	"servant"	<i>слуги</i> (слуги)

Neuter nouns have the following endings:

- [о] changes to [а].

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Genitive case noun</b>
<i>окно</i> (окно)	"window"	<i>окна</i> (окна )
<i>kreslo</i> (кресло)	"armchair"	<i>kresla</i> (кресла)
<i>pis'mo</i> (письмо)	"letter"	<i>pis'ma</i> (письма)

- [е] and [ие] change to [я] and [ия], respectively.

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Genitive case noun</b>
<i>поле</i> поле	"field"	<i>поля</i> поля
<i>more</i> море	"sea"	<i>moreya</i> моря
<i>zdaniye</i> здание	"building"	<i>zdaniya</i> здания

- In neuter nouns ending in [мя], change the [я] to [ени]. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Genitive case noun
<i>вре́мя (время)</i>	"time"	<i>вре́мени (времени)</i>
<i>и́мя (имя)</i>	"name"	<i>и́мени (имени)</i>
<i>пла́мя (пламя)</i>	"flame"	<i>пла́мени (пламени)</i>

The grammar structure of a sentence is very simple: The possessor follows the object. For example:

1. Тетрадь Ивана на столе.  
*Tetrad' Ivana na stole.*  
"Ivan's notebook is on the table."

The owner of a notebook is Ivan; therefore, Иван (*Ivan*) is put in the genitive case, whereas the word *столe* (*stole*) "on the table" is put in the prepositional case, since it denotes the location of a notebook. Please note that, despite the flexible word order in Russian sentences, a sentence in which a possessor is put before the object doesn't sound natural. For example, the sentence above would sound odd if spoken as *Ивана тетрадь на столе* (*Ivana tetrad' na stole*).

Let me give you more examples (the word put in the genitive case is underlined):

1. Это машина Игоря?  
*Eto mashina Igorya?*  
"Is this Igor's car?"
2. Сестра Алины читает газету.  
*Sestra Aliny chitayet gazetu.*  
"Alina's sister is reading a newspaper."
3. Это кот Антонa.  
*Eto kot Antona.*  
"This is Anton's cat."



4. Брат Ивана гуляет в парке.  
*Brat Ivana gulyayet v parke.*  
"Ivan's brother is walking in the park."
5. Комната мамы очень большая.  
*Komnata mamy ochen' bol'shaya.*  
"Mom's room is very big."

Do you know that the genitive case is also used in the expression "I have" in Russian? Let me show you the grammar structure of this simple phrase.

У меня есть... (*U menya yest'...*) - "I have..."

The grammar structure is:

У (*U*) (preposition) + меня (*menya*) (the pronoun "I" in the genitive case) + есть (*yest'*) (the verb "to have") + [object in nominative case, answering the question "what?" or "who?"]

You can use the same structure to talk about "him," "her," "us," or someone else. All you need to do is replace "I" with the appropriate pronoun or noun in the genitive case.

<b>Pronoun in nominative case</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Pronoun in genitive case</b>
<i>я (я)</i>	"I"	<i>меня (меня)</i>
<i>ты (ты)</i>	"you"	<i>тебя (тебя)</i>
<i>он (он)</i>	"he"	<i>его / него (его / него)</i>
<i>она (она)</i>	"she"	<i>её / неё (её / неё)</i>
<i>оно (оно)</i>	"it"	<i>него (него)</i>
<i>мы (мы)</i>	"we"	<i>нас (нас)</i>
<i>вы (вы)</i>	"you" (pl)	<i>вас (вас)</i>
<i>они (они)</i>	"they"	<i>их / них (их / них)</i>

The genitive case is always used after negated forms of the verb **быть** (*byt'*) - "to be" in all tenses in which we want to express the absence (nonexistence) of something or somebody:

*нет* (*net*) - "no," "don't," "there is no"

*не было* (*ne bylo*) - "did not," "there was no," "there were no"

*не будет* (*ne budet*) - "there will be no," "there shall be no"

The object or person that is absent should be put in the genitive case.

For example (the word put in the genitive case is underlined>):

1. У меня нет машины, у меня есть велосипед.  
*U menya net mashiny, u menya yest' velosiped.*  
"I don't have a car. I have a bicycle."

2. У вас есть мелкие деньги?  
*U vas yest' melkiye den'gi?*  
"Do you have small change?"

3. У него нет сестры.  
*U nego net sestry.*  
"He doesn't have a sister."

4. Вчера не было дождя.  
*Vchera ne bylo dozhdya.*  
"Yesterday, there was no rain."

5. У меня нет времени.  
*U menya net vremeni.*  
"I have no time."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Exhibitions in Russia

---

Russian people like to go to various exhibitions, whether they be art or industrial. One of the most famous places for art exhibitions is the State Hermitage, which is situated in Saint Petersburg. Its collection includes more than three million works of art and artefacts of world culture, including antiquity pieces, Western European art, numismatic collections, works of applied art, and sculptures from countries all over the world. The Russian Museum, which is also located in Saint Petersburg, is considered to be the first state museum of fine arts in Russia. It also owns a number of collections of unique artistic treasures that are displayed at the Mikhailovsky Palace, one of the museum's buildings. The Tretyakov Gallery in Moscow is famous for its collection of masterpieces dating from about one thousand years ago.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #15

## Renting an Apartment in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# **15**

## RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Добрый день. Меня зовут Алекс, я из Америки. Я хочу снять квартиру.
2. БРОКЕР: Здравствуйте. Какую именно квартиру вы ищете?
3. АЛЕКС: Я хочу снять просторное и светлое жильё, где есть холодильник и кондиционер.
4. БРОКЕР: Вы хотите снять квартиру или одну комнату квартиры? Квартира намного дороже комнаты.
5. АЛЕКС: Тогда, одну комнату.

## ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Dobryy den'. Menya zovut Aleks, ya iz Ameriki. Ya khochu snyat' kvartiru.
2. BROKER: Zdravstvuyte. Kakuyu imenno kvartiru vy ishchete?
3. ALEKS: Ya khochu snyat' prostornoye i svetloye zhil'yo, gde yest' kholodil'nik i konditsioner.
4. BROKER: Vy khotite snyat' kvartiru ili odnu komnatu kvartiry? Kwartira namnogo dorozhe komnaty.
5. ALEKS: Togda, odnu komnatu.

## ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. ALEX: Good afternoon. My name is Alex. I'm from America. I want to rent an apartment.
2. BROKER: Good day. What kind of apartment exactly are you looking for?
3. ALEX: I want to rent a bright and spacious accommodation with a refrigerator and an air conditioner.
4. BROKER: Do you want to rent an apartment or one room of an apartment? An apartment is much more expensive than a room.
5. ALEX: Then, one room.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
квартира	kvartira	apartment/flat	noun	feminine
снять	snyat'	to rent	verb	
искать	iskat'	to look for, search	verb	
светлый	svetlyy	bright	noun	masculine
кондиционер	konditsioner	air conditioner	noun	masculine
жильё	zhil'yo	housing, accommodation	noun	neuter
именно	imenno	exactly	adverb	none
комната	komnata	room	noun	feminine
холодильник	kholodil'nik	refrigerator	noun	masculine
просторный	prostornyy	spacious	adjective	masculine

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Квартиры в Москве очень дорогие.</b> <i>Kvartiry v Moskve ochen' dorigiye.</i></p> <p>"Apartments in Moscow are very expensive."</p>	<p><b>У него двухкомнатная квартира в Москве.</b> <i>U nego dvukhkomnatnaya kvartira v Moskve.</i></p> <p>"He has a 2-room (one bedroom) apartment in Moscow."</p>
<p><b>Где я могу снять комнату?</b> <i>Gde ya mogu snyat' komnatu?</i></p> <p>"Where can I rent a room?"</p>	<p><b>Чтобы снять комнату или квартиру, нужно обратиться в агентство недвижимости.</b> <i>Chtoby snyat' komnatu ili kvartiru, nuzhno obratit'sya v agentstvo nedvizhimosti.</i></p> <p>"To rent a room or an apartment you need to go to the real estate agency."</p>
<p><b>Что ты ищешь?</b> <i>Chto ty ishchesh'?</i></p> <p>"What are you looking for?"</p>	<p><b>Он уже 2 года ищет себе девушку.</b> <i>On uzhe 2 goda ishchet sebe devushku.</i></p> <p>"He's been looking for a girlfriend for two years already."</p>
<p><b>Я ищу свой кошелёк.</b> <i>Ya ishchu svoy koshelyok.</i></p> <p>"I'm looking for my wallet."</p>	<p><b>Что ты ищешь в моей комнате?</b> <i>Chto ty ishchesh' v moyey komnate?</i></p> <p>"What are you looking for in my room?"</p>
<p><b>Я ищу квартиру в Москве.</b> <i>Ya ishchu kvartiru v Moskve.</i></p> <p>"I'm looking for a flat in Moscow."</p>	<p><b>Светлана очень добрый и светлый человек.</b> <i>Светлана очень добрый и светлый человек.</i></p> <p>"Svetlana is a very kind and bright person."</p>
<p><b>Включи кондиционер, пожалуйста, в комнате очень жарко.</b> <i>Vklyuchi konditsioner, pozhaluysta, v komnate ochen' zharko.</i></p> <p>"Please turn on the air conditioner, it's very hot in the room."</p>	<p><b>В уголовном деле присутствовала именно эта фамилия.</b> <i>V ugolovnom dele prisutstvovala imenno eta familiya.</i></p> <p>"In the case exactly this surname appeared."</p>

<p><b>Мне нужно убрать в комнате сегодня вечером.</b>  <i>Mne nuzhno ubrat' v komnate segodnya vecherom.</i></p> <p>"I need to clean up my room tonight."</p>	<p><b>В этой квартире четыре комнаты.</b>  <i>V etoy kvartire chetyre komnaty.</i></p> <p>"There are four rooms in this apartment."</p>
<p><b>Я забыла очки в комнате.</b>  <i>Ya zabyala ochki v komnate.</i></p> <p>"I forgot my glasses in the room."</p>	<p><b>Это твоя комната?</b>  <i>Eto tvoya komnata?</i></p> <p>"Is this your room?"</p>
<p><b>Какие продукты всегда есть в вашем холодильнике?</b>  <i>Kakiye produkty vsegda yest' v vashem kholodil'nike?</i></p> <p>"What products are always in your refrigerator?"</p>	<p><b>- Как ты живешь без холодильника? -  Я питаюсь ресторанах.</b>  <i>- Kak ty zhivesh' bez kholodil'nika? - Ya pitayus' restoranakh.</i></p> <p>"- How come you live without a fridge? - I eat in the restaurants."</p>

**В этом университете новые и просторные аудитории.**

*V etom universitete novyye i prostornyye auditorii.*

"There are new and spacious classrooms in this university."

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **снять (*snyat'*)**

The first key word for this lesson is the verb **снять (*snyat'*)**, which can be translated as "to rent" or "to lease." As you'd expect, this verb is used with such nouns as **квартира (*kvartira*)**, meaning "apartment;" **комната (*komnata*)**, meaning "room;" **жильё (*zhil'yo*)**, meaning "housing;" **помещение (*pomeshcheniye*)**, meaning "premises;" **офис (*ofis*)**, meaning "office;" etc. These should be put in the accusative case.

For example:



1. Я хочу снять квартиру в центре *Москвы*.  
*Ya khochu snyat' kvartiru v tsentre Moskvu.*  
"I want to rent an apartment in the center of Moscow."
2. Компания планирует снять новый *офис*.  
*Kompaniya planiruyet snyat' novuyu ofis.*  
"The company plans to rent a new office."
3. На сколько времени вы хотите снять *комнату*?  
*Na skol'ko vremeni vy khotite snyat' komnatu?*  
"How long do you want to rent a room for?"

The next meaning of this word is "to take off" (clothes, shoes, hat, etc.).

For example:

1. Он зашел в комнату, снял свитер и прилёг на *кровать*.  
*On zashel v komnatu, snyal sviter i prilog na krovat'.*  
"He entered the room, took off his sweater, and laid down on the bed."
2. На улице было очень жарко и Ваня снял *шапку*.  
*Na ulitse bylo ochen' zharko i Vanya snyal shapku.*  
"It was very hot outside, so Vanya took off his hat."

## **светлый (svetlyy)**

The next key word for this lesson is the adjective **светлый (svetlyy)**, meaning "bright" or "light." We use this word for several meanings.

### **1. "Filled with light"**

For example:

1. Светлая *комната*.  
*Svetlaya komnata.*  
"A bright room."

2. Мы зашли в светлый зал ресторана.  
*My zashli v svetlyy zal restorana.*  
"We entered a bright room in the restaurant."

## 2. "Not dark in color"

For example:

1. У неё были светлые волосы и голубые глаза.  
*U neyo byli svetlyye volosy i golubyye glaza.*  
"She had light hair and blue eyes."
2. Он пришёл на работу в светлом костюме.  
*On prishol na rabotu v svetlom kostyume.*  
"He came to work wearing a light suit."

**3. When talking about character**, светлый (*svetlyy*) means that a person is very good and kind, with a strong sense of morality. This person brings joy to others, filling them with positive emotions, like a light. When talking about mental abilities, it means that a person is very logical and clever. It's often used in such expressions as светлая голова (*svetlaya golova*), meaning "clear head," and светлый ум (*svetlyy um*), meaning "clear mind."

For example:

1. Анна Ивановна очень добрый, заботливый, светлый человек.  
*Anna Ivanovna ochen' dobryy, zabolivyy, svetlyy chelovek.*  
"Anna Ivanovna is a very kind, caring, and bright person."
2. У этого ученика светлая голова - он может решить любую задачу.  
*U etogo uchenika svetlaya golova - on mozhet reshit' lyubuyu zadachu.*  
"This student has a clear head-he can solve any task."

## GRAMMAR

## The Focus of This Lesson Is the Usage of the Genitive Case to Make Comparisons and Convey a Part of a Whole

Вы хотите снять квартиру или одну комнату квартиры? Квартира намного дороже комнаты.

*Vy khotite snyat' kvartiru ili odnu komnatu kvartiry? Kvartira namnogo dorozhe komnaty.*

"Do you want to rent an apartment or one room in an apartment? An apartment is much more expensive than a room."

---

In previous the lesson (Lesson 14), you started to learn about the genitive case, and in this lesson, we'll focus on other very important instances of its usage. You learned that the genitive case is used to indicate possession. You also learned that it's used in the grammar structure "I have" and after negated forms of the verb "to be." But these aren't the only times the genitive case should be applied. In this lesson, you'll learn two more usages: making comparisons and indicating part of a whole.

The genitive case is used when we want to compare the features or qualities of one object or person with another—in other words, in a comparison.

For example:

1. Комната дешевле квартиры.  
*Komnata deshevle kvartiry.*  
"A room is cheaper than an apartment."

The grammar structure is:

**[noun in nominative case] + [comparison] + [noun in genitive case]**

Lets break down our sentence and see how it corresponds to the above-mentioned grammatical structure.

---

Nominative case	Comparison	Genitive case
Комната	дешевле	квартиры
<i>Komnata</i>	<i>deshevle</i>	<i>kvartiry</i>
"room"	"is cheaper"	"than an apartment"

Please note that you can express the comparison in two ways:

1. Мужчина сильнее, чем женщина. (Lesson 7)  
*Muzhchina sil'neye, chem zhenshchina.*  
"A man is stronger than a woman."
2. Мужчина сильнее женщины.  
*Muzhchina sil'neye zhenshchiny.*  
"A man is stronger than a woman."

In the first example, the nouns *мужчина* (*muzhchina*), meaning "a man," and *женщина* (*zhenshchina*), meaning "a woman," are in nominative case. In the second example, the word *женщина* (*zhenshchina*), meaning "a woman," was put in the genitive case. If you put a word in the genitive case, you don't need to use the word *чем* (*chem*) "than" in your sentence. The meaning of both examples is exactly the same.

Here are more examples:

1. Яблоко вкуснее груши. (the genitive case was used)  
*Yabloko vkusneye grushi.*  
"An apple is tastier than a pear." OR
2. Яблоко вкуснее, чем груша.  
*Yabloko vkusneye, chem grusha.*  
"An apple is tastier than a pear."

The word *груша* (*grusha*), meaning "a pear," is in the nominative case, whereas the word *груши* (*grushi*) is a noun put in the genitive case.

1. Лето теплее весны. (the genitive case was used)  
*Leto tepleye vesny.*  
"Summer is warmer than spring." OR
2. Лето теплее, чем весна.  
*Leto tepleye, chem vesna.*  
"Summer is warmer than spring."

The word весна (*vesna*), meaning "spring," is in the nominative case. весны (*vesny*) is in the genitive.

1. Собака умнее черепахи. (the genitive case was used)  
*Sobaka umneye cherepakhi.*  
"A dog is smarter than a turtle." OR
2. Собака умнее, чем черепаха.  
*Sobaka umneye cherepakhi.*  
"A dog is smarter than a turtle."

Черепаха (*cherepakha*), meaning "turtle," is put into the nominative case. черепахи (*cherepakhi*) is in the genitive case.

The genitive case is also used when we want to express that something is a part of a whole. In this case, the noun expressing the whole should be put in the genitive case.

For example:

1. Комната квартиры.  
*Komnata kvartiry.*  
"A room in an apartment."

It is obvious that the room is a part of an apartment. In Russian, the word for "apartment" should be put in the genitive case.

1. Крыша дома.  
*Krysha doma.*  
"The roof of a house."

The word "house" is in the genitive case because the house is a whole, whereas the "roof" is a part of the whole.

1. Кусок пирога.  
*Kusok piroga.*  
"A piece of cake."

The word *пирог* (*pirog*), meaning "a cake," is in the genitive case because it means the whole thing, whereas "a piece" is just a part of a cake.

1. *Улица города.*  
*Ulitsa goroda.*  
"A street in the city."

Every city consists of some streets, squares, etc. So, the "city" is a whole and a "street" is a part. Therefore, following the rule, the word for "city" was put in the genitive case.

1. *Лаборатория университета.*  
*Laboratoriya universiteta.*  
"The laboratory of the university."

If you imagine a university, you'll probably think of classrooms, libraries, laboratories, and dormitories. They're all included in a university. They are parts of a whole, so that's why the word "laboratory" was put in the nominative case, whereas the word "university" is in the genitive.

### Language Tip

---

In our dialogue, there's the verb *искать* (*iskat'*), meaning "to search" or "to look for." Let's see how it conjugates in the present tense.

---

Pronoun	Verb	Pronoun	Verb
<i>Я</i> <i>ya</i> "I"	<b>ищу</b> <i>ishchu</i> "search" / "am searching"	<i>Мы</i> <i>my</i> "we"	<b>ищем</b> <i>ishchem</i> "search" / "are searching"
<i>Ты</i> <i>ty</i> "you"	<b>ищешь</b> <i>ishchesh'</i> "search" / "are searching"	<i>Вы</i> <i>vy</i> "you" (pl)	<b>ищете</b> <i>ishchete</i> "search" / "are searching"

---

Он / Она / Оно	<b>ищет</b>		<b>ищут</b>
on / ona / ono	<i>ishchet</i>	Они	<i>ishchut</i>
"he" / "she" / "it"	"searches" / "is searching"	они "they"	"search" / "are searching"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Renting an Apartment in Russia

There are a lot of apartment rental services in Russia that can satisfy any demand. Before renting an apartment in Russia, it's good to know several things. First of all, the rental fee depends on several factors: location, total area, and renovations. Of course, being closer to the center is more expensive. Secondly, when Russian people count rooms (for example, one may say that he has a three-room apartment or two rooms) they don't count the kitchen, bathroom, toilet, or entryway. In every apartment, there is a main room (as a rule, the biggest one) called *большая комната* (*bol'shaya komnata*), meaning "the big room," which is used for meeting guests and entertaining. Usually, a TV is situated in the kitchen and in the big room, where all members of a family can watch it together. It can be surprising, but Russian apartments are very warm in the winter due to the central heating.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #16

# What's Wrong With Your Russian Hotel Room?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# **16**



## RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Добрый день! Это Алекс Бейкер из номера 205. Я хочу поменять номер.
2. ПЕРСОНАЛ: Здравствуйте, что случилось?
3. АЛЕКС: Если в двух словах, то у меня в номере не работает душ и чистота номера оставляет желать лучшего.
4. ПЕРСОНАЛ: Прошу нас извинить, мы немедленно переведём вас в номер-люкс. Ещё раз извините, пожалуйста.

## ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Dobryy den'! Eto Aleks Beyker iz nomera 205. Ya khochu pomenyat' nomer.
2. PERSONAL: Zdravstvuyte, chto sluchilos'?
3. ALEKS: Esli v dvukh slovakh to menya v nomere ne rabotayet dush i chistota nomera ostavlyayet zhelat' luchshego.
4. PERSONAL: Proshu nas izvinit', my nemedlenno perevedom vas v nomer-lyuks. Yeshcho raz izvinite, pozhaluysta.

## ENGLISH

1. ALEX: Hello! This is Alex Baker from Room 205. I want to change rooms.

CONT'D OVER

2. STAFF: Hello. What happened?
3. ALEX: To put it in a nutshell, in my room, the shower isn't working, and the cleanliness leaves much to be desired.
4. STAFF: We do apologize. We will immediately move you into a suite. Once again, please accept our apologies.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
поменять	pomenyat'	to change	verb	
что случилось?	chto sluchilos'?	what happened?	phrase	
не работает	ne rabotayet	does not work, out of service	adjective	
душ	dush	shower	noun	masculine
чистота	chistota	cleanliness	noun	feminine
просить	prosit'	to ask	verb	
оставляет желать лучшего	ostavlyayet zhelat' luchshego	leaves much to be desired	phrase	
немедленно	nemedlenno	immediately	adverb	
ещё раз	yeshcho raz	once again, again	phrase	
в двух словах	v dvukh slovakh	to put it in a nutshell	phrase	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>После свадьбы она поменяла фамилию.</b> <i>Posle svad'by ona pomenyala familiyu.</i></p> <p>"After the wedding, she changed her family name."</p>	<p><b>Что случилось? Почему ты такой бледный?</b> <i>Chto sluchilos'? Pochemu ty takoy blednyy?</i></p> <p>"What happened? Why are you so pale?"</p>
<p><b>Уважаемые посетители, туалет не работает.</b> <i>Uvazhayemyye posetiteli, tualet ne rabotayet.</i></p> <p>Dear visitors, the toilet is out of service.</p>	<p><b>Ты уже принял душ?</b> <i>Ty uzhe prinyal dush?</i></p> <p>"Have you already taken a shower?"</p>
<p><b>В квартире необходимо поддерживать чистоту.</b> <i>V kvartire neobkhodimo podderzhat' chistotu.</i></p> <p>"The apartment must be kept clean."</p>	<p><b>Дети часто просят купить им сладости.</b> <i>Deti chasto prosyat kupit' im sladosti.</i></p> <p>"Children often ask you to buy them sweets."</p>
<p><b>Когда освободишься, немедленно перезвони!</b> <i>Kogda osvobodish'sya, nemedlenno perezvoni!</i></p> <p>"When you're free please call me back immediately."</p>	<p><b>Повторите, пожалуйста, еще раз.</b> <i>Povtorite, pozhaluysta, yeshche raz.</i></p> <p>"Could you repeat that once again please?"</p>
<p><b>Давай посмотрим этот фильм ещё раз.</b> <i>Davay posmotrim etot fil'm yeshcho raz.</i></p> <p>"Let's watch this movie once again."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **оставляет желать лучшего (*Ostavlyayet zhelat' luchshego*)**

The first key phrase for this lesson is the phrase **оставляет желать лучшего (*Ostavlyayet zhelat' luchshego*)**, which was used in our dialog:

1. У меня в номере не работает душ, да и чистота номера оставляет желать лучшего.

*U menya v nomere ne rabotayet dush i chistota nomera ostavlyayet zhelat' luchshego.*

"In my room, the shower isn't working, and the cleanliness leaves much to be desired."

This phrase can be translated as "leaves much to be desired." Now, let's break this phrase down into its components. The verb *оставляет* (*ostavlyayet*) means "leaves," and the verb *желать* (*zhelat'*) means "to desire," while the adjective *лучшего* (*luchshego*) means "better." So, this phrase has almost the same meaning as the English phrase, "leaves much to be desired." We use this phrase if we want to complain that something (or its quality) is not good enough or doesn't correspond to certain requirements. It could refer to things, products, or even the weather.

For example:

1. Погода сегодня оставляет желать лучшего.  
*Pogoda segodnya ostavlyayet zhelat' luchshego.*  
"The weather today leaves much to be desired."
2. Тебе нравятся товары этой компании?  
- Ну, качество оставляет желать лучшего.  
*Tebe nrayatsya tovary etoy kompanii?*  
- *Nu, kachestvo ostavlyayet zhelat' luchshego.*  
"Do you like the goods of this company?"  
- "Well, the quality leaves much to be desired."

### **в двух словах (v dvukh slovakh)**

The second key phrase for this lesson is *в двух словах* (*v dvukh slovakh*), which can be translated as "to put it in a nutshell." The phrase consists of three words: the preposition *в* (*v*), which means "in;" the numeral *двух* (*dvukh*), which means "two" (it's a plural numeral put in the genitive case); and the noun *словах* (*slovakh*), which means "words" (plural noun put in the genitive case). So, the literal translation of this phrase is "in two words." The meaning is quite clear: to tell something in short or very quickly.

For example:

1. Расскажи, пожалуйста, в двух словах, что произошло.  
*Rasskazhi, pozhaluysta, v dvukh slovakh, chto proizoshlo.*  
"Tell us, please, in a nutshell, what happened."
2. Объясните мне в двух словах суть вашего проекта.  
*Ob'yasnite mne v dvukh slovakh sut' vashego proyekta.*  
"Explain to me in, a few words, the main point of your project."

## GRAMMAR

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Difference Between the Prepositional, the Accusative, and the Genitive Cases**

**Добрый день! Это Алекс Бейкер из номера 205. Я хочу поменять номер.  
*Dobryy den'! Eto Aleks Beyker iz nomera 205. Ya khochu pomenyat' nomer.*  
"Hello! This is Alex Baker from Room 205. I want to change rooms."**

---

In this lesson, you will continue to learn about the genitive case. In our previous lessons, you learned that the genitive case is used:

1. to indicate possession
2. in the grammatical structure "I have"
3. after the negated forms of the verb "to be"
4. in comparisons
5. to indicate a part of a whole

The genitive case is also used to indicate the origin or onset of an action. It answers the question Откуда? (*otkuda?*), which can be translated into English as "where from?" It's used when we want to indicate the starting point of some movement.

For example:

1. Сэм приехал из Америки.  
*Sem priyekhal iz Ameriki.*  
"Sam came from America."
2. Акира - студент из Японии.  
*Akira - student iz Yaponii.*  
"Akira is a student from Japan."
3. Друг приехал из Москвы.  
*Drug priyekhal iz Moskvy.*  
"A friend came from Moscow."
4. Директор вышел из кабинета.  
*Direktor vyshel iz kabineta.*  
"The director stepped out of his office."

In all of these sentences, the subject came from a certain place: America, Japan, Moscow, or "his office." These represent the origins or onsets of the actions.

In previous lessons, you learned the prepositional case, which indicates the location of something or somebody, and the accusative case, which denotes the direction or place toward which something or someone is moving. Let's see the difference between them.

<b>Prepositional case</b>	<b>Accusative case</b>	<b>Genitive case</b>
<b>где?</b> <i>gde?</i> "where?"	<b>куда?</b> <i>kuda?</i> "where to?"	<b>откуда?</b> <i>otkuda?</i> "where from?"
<i>в банке</i> <i>v banke</i> "in the bank"	<i>в банк</i> <i>v bank</i> "to the bank"	<i>из банка</i> <i>iz banka</i> "from the bank"
<i>в институте</i> <i>v institute</i> "in/at the institute"	<i>в институт</i> <i>v institut</i> "to the institute"	<i>из института</i> <i>iz instituta</i> "from the institute"

---

<i>в больнице</i>	<i>в больницу</i>	<i>из больницы</i>
<i>v bol'nitse</i>	<i>v bol'nitsu</i>	<i>iz bol'nitsy</i>
"in the hospital"	"to the hospital"	"from the hospital"

---

For example:

1. Дедушка сейчас в больнице.  
*Dedushka seychas v bol'nitse.*  
"Grandfather is in the hospital now."

In this sentence, we should use the prepositional case because the sentence only expresses the current location of the grandfather and does not point out the destination of his movement or his origin.

1. Дедушка пошёл в больницу.  
*Dedushka poshol v bol'nitsu.*  
"Grandpa went to the hospital."

In this sentence, the accusative case is used because the hospital is the aim of the grandfather's movement (i.e., his direction, his goal).

For example:

1. Дедушка пришёл из больницы.  
*Dedushka prishol iz bol'nitsy.*  
"Grandfather came from the hospital."

In this sentence, the genitive case was used. Why? Because the starting point of Grandfather's movement is the hospital.

1. Директор сейчас в офисе?  
*Direktor seychas v ofise?*  
"Is the director at the office now?"

We are only interested in the current location of the director, so the prepositional case should

be used.

For example:

1. Директор уже пришёл в офис?  
*Direktor uzhe prishol v ofis?*  
"Has the director already come to the office?"

In this sentence, we used the accusative case because the office is a destination point. The director is expected to come here.

For example:

1. Директор только что уехал из офиса.  
*Direktor tol'ko chto uyekhal iz ofisa.*  
"The director has just left the office."

The office is a place from which the director his movement; therefore, the genitive case should be used.

Now, let's combine the three cases into one sentence.

1. Скажите пожалуйста, Иван Петрович уже дома?  
- Еще нет, он недавно выехал из офиса и сейчас едет на совещание.  
*Skazhite pozhaluysta, Ivan Petrovich uzhe doma?*  
- *Yeshche net, on nedavno vyyekhal iz ofisa i seychas yedet na soveshchaniye.*  
"Could you tell me, please, is Ivan Petrovich already at home?"  
- "Not yet. He recently stepped out of the office and now is going to the meeting."

The word *дома (doma)*, meaning "at home," is put in the prepositional case, as it expresses the possible location of Ivan Petrovich. The word *офиса (ofisa)*, meaning "office," is used in the genitive case, as it was the starting point of his movement to the meeting, and the meeting, being a destination point, was used in the accusative case.



1. Я лечу из Киева в Париж, и сейчас нахожусь в аэропорту "Шереметьево," жду свой рейс.  
*Ya lechu iz Kiyeva v Parizh, i seychas nakhozhus' v aeroportu "Sheremet'yevu," zhdu svoeyego reysa.*  
"I'm flying from Kiev to Paris, and now I'm in Sheremetyevo Airport, waiting for my flight."

The origin of my flight is Kiev (genitive case), the direction toward which I'm moving is Paris (accusative case), and my current location is the airport (prepositional case).

1. Мужчина вышел из магазина и быстро побежал на станцию метро.  
*Muzhchina vyshel iz magazina i bystro pobezhal na stantsiyu metro.*  
"The man went out of the store and quickly ran to the metro station."

The word "store" is used in the genitive case, whereas the word "station" is in the accusative.

1. Поставь на стол сок и салат. Ой, и принеси с кухни вилки и ножи.  
*Postav' na stol sok i salat. Oy, i prinesi s kukhni vilki i nozhi.*  
"Put juice and salad on the table. Oh, and bring knives and forks from the kitchen."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Hotels in Russia

---

The range of hotels in Russia is greater than ever before; therefore, prices are also considered higher than average. In Russian hotels, you'll be given a карточка гостя (*kartochka gostya*), which is a kind of hotel pass that includes information about a guest and establishes an identity. Almost all hotels provide Internet or Wi-Fi, as well as international dialing. Speaking of hotels in Russia, it's worth mentioning that some hotels are very unique. For example, you can feel the atmosphere of the Soviet Union in Sovietsky Historical Hotel (where movies requiring the old Soviet interior are still made). If you want to stay in a real palace, then pay attention to Petroff Palace Hotel. This hotel, which is situated in the territory of Pokrovsky Monastery, will surprise you with its unique atmosphere of traditional Russian culture and religion.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #17

## Buying the Perfect Present in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# 17

## RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Лера, мне нужен твой совет. Завтра у моего коллеги день рождения, а я еще не решил, что ему купить.
2. ЛЕРА: А какие у тебя есть идеи?
3. АЛЕКС: Я выбрал ему часы.
4. ЛЕРА: Хм..Ты знаешь, что дарить часы это плохая примета? Может лучше купить ему хороший портсигар или дорогую фирменную ручку? Например, Паркер.
5. АЛЕКС: О! Идея! Он давно хотел визитницу, куплю её.

## ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Lera, mne nuzhen tvoy sovet. Zavtra u moyego kollegi den' rozhdeniya, a ya yeshche ne reshil, chto yemu kupit'.
2. LERA: A kakiye u tebya yest' idey?
3. ALEKS: Ya vybral yemu chasy.
4. LERA: Khm..Ty znayesh', chto darit' chasy eto plokhaya primeta? Mozhet luchshe kupit' yemu khoroshiy portsigar ili doroguyu firmennuyu ruchku? Naprimer, Parker.
5. ALEKS: O! Ideya! On davno khotel vizitnitsu, kuplyu yeyo.

## ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. ALEX: Lera, I need your advice. Tomorrow is my colleague's birthday, and I haven't decided yet what to buy him.
2. LERA: And what ideas do you have?
3. ALEX: I've thought about getting him a watch.
4. LERA: Hmm...Do you know that giving a watch is considered to be a bad sign? Maybe it's better to buy a good cigar case or an expensive, branded pen. For example, Parker.
5. ALEX: Oh! I've got an idea! He's wanted a business card holder for a long time. I'll buy one.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
фирменный	firmennyy	branded	adjective	masculine
часы	chasy	watch, clock	noun	always plural
портсигар	portsigar	cigarette case	noun	masculine
совет	sovet	advice	noun	masculine
завтра	zavtra	tomorrow	adverb	
коллега	kolega	coworker, colleague	noun	feminine/ masculine
день рождения	den' rozhdeniya	birthday	phrase	masculine
решить	reshit'	to decide, to solve	verb	
примета	primeta	omen, sign, token	noun	feminine

дарить

darit'

to give, to  
present

verb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

**У вас есть фирменный чехол Нокиа для телефона?**

*U vas yest' firmennyu chekhol Nokia dlya telefona?*

"Do you have a branded Nokia case for the phone?"

**Эти часы идут неправильно.**

*Eti chasy idut nepravil'no.*

"This clock is wrong."

**Наталья Петровна любит давать всем советы.**

*Natal'ya Petrovna lyubit davat' vsem sovety.*

"Natalya Petrovna loves to give advice to everyone."

**Он дал мне полезный совет.**

*On dal mne poleznyy sovet.*

"He gave me a piece of very useful advice."

**Что ты завтра делаешь?**

*Chto ty zavtra delayesh'?*

"What are you doing tomorrow?"

**Вы завтра свободны?**

*Vy zavtra svobodny?*

"Are you free tomorrow?"

**Я позвоню тебе завтра.**

*Ya pozvonyu tebe zavtra.*

"I'll call you tomorrow."

**Завтра мы идём в кино.**

*Zavtra my idyom v kino.*

"Tomorrow I'm going to the cinema."

**Завтра я буду работать.**

*Zavtra ya budu rabotat'.*

"Tomorrow I'll be working."

**У меня на работе замечательные коллеги.**

*U menya na rabote zamechatel'nyye kollegi.*

"I have great colleagues at work."

**Познакомься, это Лера, моя коллега.**

*Poznakom'sya, eto Lera, moya kollega.*

"Let me introduce you. This is Lera, my co-worker."

**Когда твой день рождения?**

*Kogda tvoy den' rozhdeniya?*

"When is your birthday?"

<p><b>Приглашаю тебя на день рождения.</b>  <i>Priglashayu tebya na den' rozhdeniya.</i></p> <p>"I'm inviting you to my birthday party."</p>	<p><b>После совета своего дяди я решил поехать учиться в Англию.</b>  <i>Posle soveta svojego dyadi ya reshil poyekhat' uchit'sya v Angliyu.</i></p> <p>"After the advice of my uncle, I decided to go to England to study."</p>
<p><b>Сегодня мы обязательно должны решить, в какой музей пойдем завтра.</b>  <i>Segodnya my obyazatel'no dolzhny reshit', v kakoy muzey poydem zavtra.</i></p> <p>"We need to decide today which museum we are going to go tomorrow."</p>	<p><b>Родители дарят своим детям любовь и ласку.</b>  <i>Roditeli daryat svoim detyam lyubov' i lasku.</i></p> <p>"Parents give their children love and affection."</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### решить (*reshit'*)

The first key word for this lesson is the verb **решить** (*reshit'*), which can be translated as "to decide" or "to solve." As you can guess, the first meaning of this verb is "to decide," which means to come to a conclusion after thinking over a problem or question for some time. A verb in the infinitive form follows the word *reshit'* (**решить**), meaning "to decide."

For example:

1. После многочисленных ссор они решили **расстаться**.  
*Posle mnogochislennykh ssor oni reshili rasstat'sya.*  
 "After numerous quarrels, they decided to break up."
2. Я решил поступить в **университет**.  
*Ya reshil postupit' v universitet.*  
 "I decided to enter the university."
3. Мы подумали и решили поехать в Тайланд вместо **Турции**.  
*My podumali i reshili poyekhat' v Tayland vmesto Turtsii.*  
 "We thought over it and decided to go to Thailand instead of Turkey."

The next meaning of this verb is "to solve," which can be used in two cases. The first is to find the correct solution to a task, such as on an exam or test, and the second is to find a way out of a hard situation. The verb *решить* (*reshit'*) requires a noun in the accusative case.

For example:

1. Ученик неправильно решил задачу.  
*Uchenik nepravil'no reshil zadachu.*  
"The pupil solved the task incorrectly."
2. Он решил все свои проблемы и наконец-то уехал отдыхать.  
*On reshil vse svoi problemy i nakonets-to uyekhal otdykhat'.*  
"He solved all his problems and finally left for a vacation."
3. Как нам решить проблему с деньгами?  
*Kak nam reshit' problemu s den'gami?*  
"How should we solve the problem with the money?"

### **коллега (*kollega*)**

The second word for this lesson is *коллега* (*kollega*), which can be translated as "colleague" or "co-worker." Maybe you noticed that, in the vocabulary list, it's pointed out that this is a noun of both feminine and masculine genders. That's not a mistake. The word *коллега* (*kollega*) is considered to be a noun of a common gender. In other words, it can refer to a male or to a female, depending on the situation. In this case, please, don't forget to use the appropriate adjectives of feminine or masculine gender, which will help your conversation partner understand whom you are talking about: male or female.

For example:

1. Рядом со мной сидит симпатичная коллега. Надо с ней познакомиться.  
*Ryadom so mnoy sidit simpatichnaya kollega. Nado s ney poznamomitsya.*  
"A pretty colleague is sitting next to me. I should get acquainted with her."

2. Вечером мне позвонил мой коллега и попросил сегодня пораньше прийти на работу.  
*Vecherom mne pozvonil moy kollega i poprosil segodnya poran'she priyti na rabotu.*  
"In the evening, I received a call from my colleague, who asked me to come to work earlier today."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson Is the Dative Case

**Я выбрал ему часы.**

*Ya vybral yemu chasy.*

**"I've thought about getting him a watch."**

---

In this lesson, you'll start to learn about the dative case. The dative case is not so hard, as it doesn't have too many rules of usage that you have to remember. The main function of the dative case is to point out the indirect object or to indicate the recipient (receiver) of an action. The dative case is also used to express someone's age, and it's also used in the grammatical structure of "I like.../I don't like..." The main questions of the dative case are *Кому?* (*Komu?*) and *Чему?* (*Chemu?*), which can be translated into English as "to whom?" "for whom?" "to what?" and "for what?"

But, you may ask, what is the indirect object? It's really simple. Let's take the sentence "Ivan presented flowers to Masha." "Ivan" is the subject (the person who is performing an action); "flowers" is the object acted on by Ivan, and it is put in the accusative case; and "Masha" is the indirect object. "Masha" is the receiver of Ivan's action. Therefore, in Russian, we put the word "Masha" in the dative case instead of saying "to Masha." Thus, the dative case means that we are "giving," "devoting," or "directing" our action to someone (this someone should be put in the dative case), or, alternately, that we are receiving something from someone (in this case, "I" should be put in the dative case).

Let's take a look at the formation of the dative case for singular nouns.

In the dative case, the masculine nouns have the following endings:

- If in the singular form with a stem ending in a consonant, you need to add the ending [y] to



the consonant. For example:

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Dative case noun</b>
<i>bank</i> (банк)	"bank"	<i>banku</i> (банку)
<i>stol</i> (стол)	"table"	<i>stolu</i> (столу)
<i>brat</i> (брат)	"brother"	<i>bratu</i> (брату)

- [й] and [ь] change to [ю]. For example:

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Dative case noun</b>
<i>muzeу</i> (музей)	"museum"	<i>muzeуu</i> (музею)
<i>slovar'</i> (словарь)	"dictionary"	<i>slovarу</i> (словарю)
<i>pisatel'</i> (писатель)	"writer"	<i>pisatelyu</i> (писателю)

- [ий] changes to [ию]. For example, *sanatoriy* (санаторий), meaning "health resort," changes to *sanatoriу* (санаторию).

Feminine nouns have the following endings:

- [а] and [я] change to [е]. For example:

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Dative case noun</b>
<i>voda</i> (вода)	"water"	<i>vode</i> (воде)
<i>sestra</i> (сестра)	"sister"	<i>sestre</i> (сестре)
<i>komnata</i> (комната)	"room"	<i>komnate</i> (комнате)
<i>sem'ya</i> (семья)	"family"	<i>sem'ye</i> (семье)

- [ь] changes to [и]. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Dative case noun
<i>tetrad'</i> (тетрадь)	"notebook"	<i>tetradi</i> (тетради)
<i>ploshchad'</i> (площадь)	"square"	<i>ploshchadi</i> (площади)

- [ия] changes to [ии]. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Dative case noun
<i>Italiya</i> (Италия)	"Italy"	<i>Italii</i> (Италии)
<i>auditoriya</i> (аудитория)	"auditorium"	<i>auditorii</i> (аудитории)

Neuter nouns have the following endings:

- [о] changes to [у].

Nominative case noun	English translation	Dative case noun
<i>okno</i> (окно)	"window"	<i>oknu</i> (окну)
<i>kreslo</i> (кресло)	"armchair"	<i>kreslu</i> (креслу)
<i>pis'mo</i> (письмо)	"letter"	<i>pis'mu</i> (письму)

- [е] and [ие] change to [ю] and [ию], respectively.

Nominative case noun	English translation	Dative case noun
<i>pole</i> (поле)	"field"	<i>polu</i> (полю)
<i>more</i> (море)	"sea"	<i>more</i> (морю)
<i>zdaniye</i> (здание)	"building"	<i>zdaniyu</i> (зданию)

In neuter nouns ending in [мя], change the [я] to [ени]. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Dative case noun
<i>вре́мя (время)</i>	"time"	<i>вре́мени (времени)</i>
<i>и́мя (имя)</i>	"name"	<i>и́мени (имени)</i>
<i>пла́мя (пламя)</i>	"flame"	<i>пла́мени (пламени)</i>

Let's look at some examples:

- Он показывает брату свою машину.  
*On pokazyvayet bratu svoju mashinu.*  
"He shows his brother his car."

Let's examine the grammatical structure of this sentence. "He" is a subject, a person who performs an action. "Shows" is verb indicating what our subject does. "Brother" is an indirect object, a recipient of an action. The brother is the person to whom a new car will be shown; therefore, the word "brother" is put in the dative case. The word "car" is put in the accusative case, as it's the direct object. So, the grammar structure of this sentence is:

[pronoun (in nominative case)] + [verb] + [noun (in dative case)] + [pronoun and noun (in accusative case)]

- Анна пишет письмо своей сестре.  
*Anna pishet pis'mo sestre.*  
"Anna is writing a letter to her sister."

"Sister" is the receiver of an action (in our case, "writing a letter" is directed to the sister); that's why it was used in the dative case.

- Я купил Марине красивые цветы.  
*Ya kupil Marine krasivyye tsvety.*  
"I brought beautiful flowers to Marina."

The word "Marina" is used in the dative case.

- Он мне постоянно *врёт*.  
*On mne postoyanno vryot.*  
"He is constantly lying to me."

The pronoun "me" is also used in the dative case, as "I" am the person who receives the action.

- Дочь помогает *маме*.  
*Doch' pomagayet mame.*  
"The daughter helps the mom."

Let's take a look at the forms of pronouns in the dative case:

<b>Pronoun in nominative case</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Pronoun in dative case</b>	<b>English translation</b>
<i>ya (Я)</i>	"I"	<i>mne (мне)</i>	"to me"
<i>ty (Ты)</i>	"you" (singular)	<i>tebe (тебе)</i>	"to you"
<i>on (Он)</i>	"he"	<i>emu (ему)</i>	"to him"
<i>ona (Она)</i>	"she"	<i>ey (ей)</i>	"to her"
<i>ono (Оно)</i>	"it"	<i>emu (ему)</i>	"to it"
<i>my (Мы)</i>	"we"	<i>nam (нам)</i>	"to us"
<i>vy (Вы)</i>	"you" (plural)	<i>vam (вам)</i>	"to you"
<i>oni (Они)</i>	"they"	<i>im (им)</i>	"to them"

For example:

- Отец нам часто дарит *подарки*.  
*Otets nam chasto darit podarki.*  
"Father often gives us presents."

2. Нужно купить им сувениры.  
*Nuzhno kupit' im suveniry.*  
"We need to buy them souvenirs."
  
3. Ты им отдал билеты на концерт?  
*Ty im ot dal bilety na kontsert?*  
"Did you give them tickets to the concert?"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Unlucky Presents in Russia

---

Do you know that, in Russia, there are things that are better to never give as presents? For example, you should avoid gifting a handkerchief, even if it's unique and very expensive. Handkerchiefs are associated with tears from ancient times, so gifting them is the same as giving tears as a present. Many superstitious people will be in a cold sweat upon seeing the cross as a gift, as it's believed that a person who receives such a present will die soon. It's also a bad sign to present knives or other sharp things because these can lead to numerous quarrels in the family (some people may think). Many people also believe that if someone in a couple presents a watch to his or her partner, they will break up soon. The clock is a symbol of time, which, in this case, is the time left for being together.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #18

## Talking About Family in Russian

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# **18**

# RUSSIAN

1. ЛЕРА: Алекс, хочешь я покажу тебе наш семейный альбом?
2. АЛЕКС: Конечно.
3. (few seconds later..)
4. ЛЕРА: Вот. Это мои родители, отец и мать.
5. АЛЕКС: Сколько лет твоему отцу?
6. ЛЕРА: Папе уже почти 65.
7. АЛЕКС: Не может быть! Он так молодо выглядит! И ты похожа на него, как две капли воды.
8. ЛЕРА: Спасибо. Мы сейчас не часто видимся, от случая к случаю, так как он живёт в другом городе. Но я очень скучаю по нему.
9. АЛЕКС: Мне тоже иногда грустно без моей семьи.

# ROMANIZATION

1. LERA: Aleks, khochesh' ya pokazhu tebe nash semeynyy al'bom?
2. ALEKS: Konechno.
3. (few seconds later..)
4. LERA: Vot. Eto moi roditeli, otets i mat'.

CONT'D OVER

5. ALEKS: Skol'ko let tvoyemu ottsu?
6. LERA: Pape uzhe pochni 65.
7. ALEKS: Ne mozhet byt'! On tak molodo vyglyadit! I ty pokhozha na nego, kak dve kapli vody.
8. LERA: Spasibo. My seychas ne chasto vidimsya, ot sluchaya k sluchayu, tak kak on zhivot v drugom gorode. No ya ochen' skuchayu po nemu.
9. ALEKS: Mne tozhe inogda grustno bez moyey sem'i.

## ENGLISH

1. LERA: Alex, if you want, I can show you our family album.
2. ALEX: Of course.
3. (A few seconds later...)
4. LERA: Here you go. These are my parents-my mom and dad.
5. ALEX: How old is your dad?
6. LERA: Dad is almost 65.
7. ALEX: No way! He looks so young! And you look like him—like two peas in a pod!

CONT'D OVER



8. LERA: Thank you. We don't see each other often-only from time to time, as he lives in another city. But I really miss him.
9. ALEX: Sometimes I'm sad without my family, too.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
почти	pochti	approximately, almost	adverb	
от случая к случаю	ot sluchaya k sluchayu	from time to time	phrase	
другой	drugoy	other, another	adjective	masculine
семейный	semeynny	family	adjective	masculine
грустно	grustno	sad	adverb	
скучать	skuchat'	miss, to be bored	verb	
как две капли воды	kak dve kapli vody	like two peas in a pod (lit. "as alike as two peas")	phrase	
быть похожим на	byt' pokhozhim na	to look like	phrase	
выглядеть	vyglyadet'	to look	verb	
жить	zhit'	to live, to stay	verb	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Уже почти 12 ночи, почему ты не спишь?</b></p> <p><i>Uzhe pochni 12 nochi, pochemu ty ne spish'?</i></p> <p>"It's almost 12 at night, why don't you sleep?"</p>	<p><b>Я не хочу это мороженое, я хочу другое.</b></p> <p><i>Ya ne khochu eto morozhenoye, ya khochu drugoye</i></p> <p>"I do not want this ice cream, I want another."</p>
<p><b>Вот, попробуйте. Это наш семейный рецепт борща.</b></p> <p><i>Vot poprobuyte. Eto nash semeynny retsept borshcha.</i></p> <p>"Please, try it. This is our family recipe of borscht."</p>	<p><b>На улице дождь и мне очень грустно.</b></p> <p><i>Na ulitse dozhd' i mne ochen' grustno.</i></p> <p>"It's raining outside, and I'm very sad."</p>
<p><b>Я скучаю по своему парню.</b></p> <p><i>Ya skuchayu po svoemu parnyu.</i></p> <p>"I miss my boyfriend."</p>	<p><b>Ты очень похожа на свою мать.</b></p> <p><i>Ty ochen' pokhozha na svoyu mat'.</i></p> <p>"You look like your mother."</p>
<p><b>Он не очень хорошо выглядит. Наверное, заболел.</b></p> <p><i>On ne ochen' khorosho vyglyadit. Navernoye, zabolet.</i></p> <p>"He doesn't look so good. He probably got sick."</p>	<p><b>Этот отель выглядит довольно старым.</b></p> <p><i>Etot otel' vyglyadit dovol'no starym.</i></p> <p>"This hotel looks pretty old."</p>
<p><b>Ты выглядишь бледным, ты хорошо себя чувствуешь?</b></p> <p><i>Ty vyglyadish' blednym, ty khorosho sebya chuvstvuyesh'?</i></p> <p>"You look pale, are you all right?"</p>	<p><b>Где ты живёшь?</b></p> <p><i>Gdye ty zhivyosh'?</i></p> <p>"Where do you live?"</p>
<p><b>Она хотела бы здесь жить.</b></p> <p><i>Ona khotela by zdes' zhit'.</i></p> <p>"She'd like to live here."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

## **время от времени (*vremya ot vremeni*)**

The first key phrase for this lesson is время от времени (*vremya ot vremeni*), which can be translated as "from time to time."

Let's look at an example from the dialogue:

1. Мы сейчас не часто видимся, от случая к случаю, так как он живёт в другом городе.  
*My seychas ne chasto vidimsya, ot sluchaya k sluchayu, tak kak on zhivot v drugom gorode.*  
"We don't see each other often—only from time to time, as he lives in another city."

The noun время (*vremya*) (instrumental case) means "time;" the preposition от (*ot*) means "from;" and another noun, времени (*vremeni*), also means "time" in the genitive case. So, this phrase literally means exactly the same as the English phrase "from time to time." We use this phrase when we want to emphasize that something happens irregularly, sometimes, or seldomly.

For example:

1. Вы часто видитесь?  
- Нет, время от времени.  
*Vy chasto vidites'?*  
- *Net, vremya ot vremeni.*  
"Do you see each other often?"  
- "No, from time to time."
2. Время от времени я хожу в театр.  
*Vremya ot vremeni ya khozhu v teatr.*  
"I go to the theater from time to time."

## **быть похожим на (*byt' pokhozhim na*)**

The second key phrase for this lesson is быть похожим на (*byt' pokhozhim na*), which can be translated as "to look like." It requires the accusative case of a noun. This phrase is used in the following forms:

1. Я похож на...(*Ya pokhozha na...*) "I look like..."
2. Ты похож на...(*Ty pokhozha na...*) "You look like..."
3. Он похож на...(*On pokhozha na...*) "He looks like..."
4. Она похожа на...(*Ona pokhozha na...*) "She looks like..."
5. Оно похоже на...(*Ono pokhozha na...*) "It looks like..."
6. Мы похожи на...(*My pokhozhi na...*) "We look like..."
7. Вы похожи на...(*Vy pokhozhi na...*) "You look like..."
8. Они похожи на...(*Oni pokhozhi na...*) "They look like..."

For example:

1. Она похожа на свою *мать*.  
*Ona pokhozha na svoyu mat'.*  
"She looks like her mother."
2. Мне кажется, что он похож на знаменитого *певца*.  
*Mne kazhetsya, chto on pokhozha na znamenitogo pevtsa.*  
"I think that he looks like a famous singer."
3. Они похожи на *студентов*.  
*Oni pokhozhi na studentov.*  
"They look like students."

## GRAMMAR

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Dative Case**

**Сколько лет твоему отцу?**

***Skol'ko let tvoyemu ottsu?***

## "How old is your father?"

In Lesson 17, you learned that the dative case is used when we want to indicate who the recipient (receiver) of an action is. In addition to this, the dative case is used for:

**1) Expressing someone's age.** In this case, the person whose age we are talking about should be put in the dative case.

Now, let's take a look at the following table, which describes the personal pronouns in the dative case.

Pronoun	Personal pronoun in dative case	English translation
Я ya "I"	мне (мне)	"to/for me"
Ты ty "you"	тебе (тебе)	"to/for you"
Он on "he"	ему / к нему (ему / к нему)	"to/for him"
Она ona "she"	ей / к ней (ей / к ней)	"to/for her"
Оно оно "it"	ему / к нему (ему / к нему)	"to/for it"
Мы my "we"	нам (нам)	"to/for us"
Вы вы "you"	вам (вам)	"to/for you"

---

Они		
oni		
"they"	im / k nim (им / к ним)	"to/for them"

---

For example:

1. Мне 25 лет.  
*Mne 25 let.*  
"I'm 25 years old."
2. Сколько вам лет?  
- Мне 19 лет.  
*Skol'ko vam let?*  
- *Mne 19 let.*  
"How old are you?"  
- "I'm nineteen years old."
3. Сколько лет этому мужчине?  
*Skol'ko let etomu muzhchine?*  
"How old is this man?"

**2) The dative case is also used to express someone's mood, feelings, or physical state.**

As a rule, in such a grammatical structure, the short form of adjectives should be used.

For example:

1. Мне больно.  
*Mne bol'no.*  
"I feel pain."
2. На улице мороз и поэтому ему холодно.  
*Na ulitse moroz i poetomu yemu kholodno.*  
"There's frost outside, and he feels cold."
3. Ей часто грустно.  
*Yey chasto grustno.*  
"She is often sad."

4. Мне интересно, о чём ты сейчас *думаешь*.  
*Mne interesno, o chom ty seychas dumayesh'.*  
"I wonder what you're thinking about."
5. Нам очень жалко, что вы не *пришли*.  
*Nam ochen' zhalko, chto vy ne prishli.*  
"We're very sorry that you did not come."
6. Маме здесь *тепло*.  
*Mame zdes' teplo.*  
"Mom is warm here."
7. Надеюсь, что вам здесь *удобно*.  
*Nadeyus', chto vam zdes' udobno.*  
"I hope that you're comfortable here."

### 3) The dative case is used in the grammatical structure: "I like/I don't like."

The grammatical structure is:

[pronoun/noun in dative case] + нравится/не нравится (in the appropriate form) + [object in the accusative case or verb in the infinitive form]

For example:

1. Мне нравится *черный кофе*.  
*Mne nravitsya chernyy kofe.*  
"I like black coffee."
2. Тебе нравится это *пальто*?  
*Tebe nravitsya eto pal'to*  
"Do you like this coat?"
3. Ему нравится *читать*.  
*Yemu nravitsya chitat'.*  
"He likes to read."

4. Мама нравится смотреть документальные *фильмы*.  
*Mame nraivitsya smotret' dokumental'nyye fil'my.*  
"Mom likes to watch documentaries."
5. Ей нравится мой *брат*.  
*Yeу nraivitsya moy brat.*  
"She likes my brother."
6. Нам нравится *путешествовать*.  
*Nam nraivitsya puteshestvovat'.*  
"We like travelling."

**4) The dative case is also used after such words as *nado* (надо), meaning "need, must, have to;" *nuzhno* (нужно), meaning "necessary, must;" and *neobkhodimo* (необходимо), meaning "necessary, must, need."**

The grammatical structure is:

[Noun/pronoun in dative case] + надо/нужно/необходимо + [infinitive form of the verb]

For example:

1. Мне нужно приготовить *поесть*.  
*Mne nuzhno prigotovit' poest'.*  
"I need to cook meals."
2. Студенту нужно сдать *экзамен*.  
*Studentu nuzhno sdat' ekzamen.*  
"The student must take the exam."
3. Нам необходимо купить *хлеб и молоко*.  
*Nam neobkhodimo kupit' khleb i moloko.*  
"We need to buy bread and milk."
4. Тебе надо лучше *заниматься*.  
*Tebe nado luchshe zanimat'sya.*  
"You need to study better."



5. Мне необходимо позвонить брату.  
*Mne neobkhodimo pozvonit' bratu.*  
"I need to call my brother."
  
6. Мне нужно помочь маме убрать в комнате.  
*Mne nuzhno pomoch' mame ubrat' v komnate.*  
"I need to help my mother to clean the room."

**4) The dative case is also used after such words as *можно* (можно), meaning "it's permitted" or "can," and *нельзя* (нельзя), meaning "it's not permitted."**

The grammatical structure is:

[Noun/pronoun in dative case] + можно/нельзя + [infinitive form of the verb]

For example:

1. Детям нельзя есть много сладкого.  
*Detyam nel'zya yest' mnogo sladkogo.*  
"Children aren't allowed to eat a lot of sweets."
  
2. Можно мне войти?  
*Mozhno mne voyti?*  
"Can I enter?"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Russian Relationships

---

Russian women are very independent and are not afraid of making decisions. It's not a rare case when a woman becomes the head of a family and earns more than her husband. However, in relationships, a man should always pay for a woman, whether in a restaurant or at a cinema. If he doesn't, he is considered to be greedy and not worthy of attention. Regarding trips abroad, it's considered to be good manners for a man to pay for the whole trip. From the times of the Soviet Union, men were taught that they should give their seats in

public transportation to women. Of course, traditions are changing, but still, many Russian men feel uncomfortable sitting while a woman is standing.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #19

## How Do You Create Art in Russia?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# **19**

## RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Лера, это твои картины?
2. ЛЕРА: Да. Тебе нравятся?
3. АЛЕКС: А то! Ты красиво рисуешь карандашом!
4. ЛЕРА: Спасибо. Меня научил мой дедушка. Он - художник и умеет рисовать и карандашом, и акварелью, и даже обыкновенной ручкой.

## ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Lera, eto tvoi kartiny?
2. LERA: Da. Tebe nrayatsya?
3. ALEKS: A to! Ty krasivo risuyesh' karandashom!
4. LERA: Spasibo. Menya nauchil moy dedushka. On - khudozhnik i umeyet risovat' i karandashom, i akvarel'yu, i dazhe obyknovennoy ruchkoy.

## ENGLISH

1. ALEX: Lera, are these pictures yours?
2. LERA: Yes. Do you like them?
3. ALEX: Of course! You draw beautifully with pencils.

CONT'D OVER

4. LERA:

Thank you. My grandpa taught me. He's a painter and can draw with pencils, with watercolor, and even with ordinary pens.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
уметь	umet'	to be able to, can	Verb	
ручка	ruchka	pen	noun	feminine
обыкновенный	obyknovennyy	ordinary	adjective	masculine
акварель	akvarel'	watercolor, aquarelle	noun	feminine
картина	kartina	picture	noun	feminine
рисовать	risovat'	to draw	verb	
карандаш	karandash	pencil	noun	masculine
научить	nauchit'	to teach	verb	none
художник	khudozhnik	painter	noun	masculine
дедушка	dedushka	grandfather	noun	masculine

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Что ты умеешь делать?</b> <i>Chto ty umeyesh' delat'?</i></p> <p>"What can you do?"</p>	<p><b>У вас есть синяя шариковая ручка?</b> <i>U vas yest' sinyaya sharikovaya ruchka?</i></p> <p>"Do you have a blue ballpoint pen?"</p>
---	---

<p><b>Вы когда-нибудь смотрели фильм “Обыкновенное чудо”?</b>  <i>Vy kogda-nibud' smotreli fil'm "Obyknovennoye chudo"?</i></p> <p>"Have you ever watched the movie "An Ordinary Miracle"?"</p>	<p><b>Мне нравятся картины Шишкина.</b>  <i>Mne nrayatsya kartiny Shishkina.</i></p> <p>"I like Shishkin pictures."</p>
<p><b>Дети любят рисовать солнце и небо.</b>  <i>Deti lyubyat risovat' solntse i nebo.</i></p> <p>"Children love to paint the sun and sky."</p>	<p><b>В Японии на уроках иероглифы часто пишут карандашом.</b>  <i>V Yaponii na urokakh iyeroglify chasto pishut karandashom.</i></p> <p>"In Japan, during lessons the characters are often written with pencil."</p>
<p><b>Ученые доказали, что невозможно научить обезьян разговаривать.</b>  <i>Uchenyye dokazali, chto nevozmozhno nauchit' obez'yan razgovarivat'.</i></p> <p>"Scientists proved that it is impossible to teach monkeys to talk."</p>	<p><b>Мне нравится этот художник. Его картины очень тёплые и глубокие.</b>  <i>Mne nraytsya etot khudozhnik. Yego kartiny ochen' toplyye i glubokiye.</i></p> <p>"I like this artist. His paintings are very warm and deep."</p>
<p><b>Мой дедушка участвовал в войне.</b>  <i>Moy dedushka uchastvoval v voyne.</i></p> <p>"My grandfather fought in the war."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### картина (*kartina*)

The first key word for this lesson is the feminine noun картина (*kartina*), meaning "picture," which has several meanings. The first meaning is that of a picture as a work of art, or some image that is painted or drawn.

For example:

1. В Эрмитаже находятся картины знаменитых художников.  
*V Ermitazhe nakhodyatsya kartiny znamenitykh khudozhnikov.*  
"There are paintings by famous artists in the Hermitage."
  
2. Куда повесить эту картину?  
- Повесьте её вот здесь, пожалуйста.  
*Kuda povesit' etu kartinu?*  
- *Poves'te yeyo vot zdes', pozhaluysta.*  
"Where should I hang this picture?"  
- "Hang it over here, please."
  
3. Эту картину нарисовал мой брат, она мне очень дорога.  
*Etu kartinu narisoval moy brat, ona mne ochen' doroga.*  
"This picture was painted by my brother. It's very important to me."

The second meaning is "movie."

For example:

1. Картина Никиты Михалкова "12" была номинирована на премию "Оскар."  
*Kartina Nikity Mikhalkova "12" byla nominirovana na premiyu "Oskar."*  
"Nikita Mikhalkov's film *12* was nominated for an Oscar."
  
2. На кинофестивале были так же представлены картины российских режиссеров.  
*Na kinofestivale byli tak zhe predstavleny kartiny rossiyskikh rezhisserov.*  
"Movies by Russian producers were also presented at the film festival."

One more meaning of this noun is "a situation," or the general condition of some event.

For example:

1. Следователь восстанавливает картину убийства.  
*Sledovatel' vosstanavlivayet kartinu ubiystva.*  
"The investigator restores a picture of murder."

2. Когда я вошел в дом, я увидел ужасную картину: все было поломано и разбито.

*Kogda ya voshel v dom, ya uvidel uzhasnuyu kartinu: vse bylo polomano i razbito.*

"When I entered the house, I saw a horrible picture-everything was broken and crashed."

### ***ruchka* (ручка)**

The second key word for this lesson is the feminine noun *ручка* (*ruchka*), which can be translated into English as "pen."

For example:

1. Моя ручка не пишет, одолжи мне свою, пожалуйста.  
*Moya ruchka ne pishet, odolzhi mne svoyu pozhaluysta.*  
"My pen is not writing. Could you lend me yours, please?"
2. Учитель исправляет ошибки красной ручкой.  
*Uchitel' ispravlyayet oshibki krasnoy ruchkoy.*  
"The teacher is correcting mistakes with a red pen."

The next meaning of this word is "handle," as in the part of an object that you can hold with your hands.

For example:

1. У чемодана оторвалась ручка.  
*U chemodana otorvalas' ruchka.*  
"The suitcase handle tore away."
2. Он случайно сломал дверную ручку.  
*On sluchayno slomal dvernuyu ruchku.*  
"He accidentally broke the door handle."

## GRAMMAR



## The Focus of This Lesson Is the Instrumental Case

Он - художник и умеет рисовать и карандашом, и акварелью, и даже обыкновенной ручкой.

*On - khudozhnik i umeyet risovat' i karandashom, i akvarel'yu, i dazhe obyknovennoy ruchkoy.*

"He's a painter and can draw with pencil, with watercolor, and even with ordinary pen."

In this lesson, you'll start to learn about the instrumental case-the last case in Russian grammar. However, it's not the easiest one. The word "instrumental" derives from "instrument." That's why it's easy to guess the main function of the instrumental case-to show what means or instrument an action is performed with. However, it has many other uses, which will be described in the next lesson (Lesson 20). The main questions of the instrumental case are Кем? (*Kem?*), meaning "by/with what?" and Чем? (*Chem?*), meaning "by/with whom?"

Now, let's have a closer look at the formation of nouns in the instrumental case.

**Masculine nouns** have the following endings:

- If, in the singular form, a stem ends in a consonant, you need to add the ending [ом] to the consonant. However, if a stem ends in [ж, ц, ч, ш, or щ], the ending depends on the stress. If the ending of a noun is under stress, then after [ж, ц, ч, ш, or щ], you should write [ом]. And, if the ending is unstressed, write [ем].

For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Instrumental case noun
<i>teatr</i> (театр)	theater	<i>teatrom</i> (театром)
<i>samolyot</i> (самолёт)	plane	<i>samyolotom</i> (самолётом)
<i>student</i> (студент)	student	<i>studentom</i> (студентом)
<i>karandash</i> (карандаш)	pencil	<i>karandashom</i> (карандашом)
<i>noz</i> (нож)	knife	<i>nozhom</i> (ножом)
<i>muzh</i> (муж)	husband	<i>muzhem</i> (мужем)

Now, let's take a closer look at this table. Why do we have **НОЖОМ** (*nozhom*), meaning "by knife," but **МУЖЕМ** (*muzhem*), meaning "by husband?" It's because the word **НОЖОМ** (*nozhom*) has stress on its ending (ножОм), whereas the word **МУЖЕМ** (*muzhem*) has stress on letter "y" (мУжем).

- [й] and [ь] change to [ем] if unstressed and [ём] if stressed. For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Instrumental case noun
<i>muzeу</i> (музей)	museum	<i>muzeуem</i> (музеем)
<i>uchitel'</i> (учитель)	teacher	<i>uchitelem</i> (учителем)
<i>sekretar'</i> (секретарь)	secretary	<i>sekretaryom</i> (секретарём)

- [ий] changes to [ием]. For example: *санаторием sanatoriyem* (санаторий sanatoriy) means "health resort," and *планетарием planetariyem* (планетарий planetariy) means "planetarium."

**Feminine nouns** have the following endings:

- [a] changes to [ой]

Nominative case noun	English translation	Instrumental case noun
<i>voda</i> (вода)	water	<i>vodoу</i> (водой)
<i>ruchka</i> (ручка)	pen	<i>ruchkoу</i> (ручкой)
<i>problema</i> (проблема)	problem	<i>probletoу</i> (проблемой)
<i>gazeta</i> (газета)	newspaper	<i>gazetoу</i> (газетой)

- [я] changes to [ей]. However, if the ending of a noun is stressed, you should write [ёй] instead of [ей]. You should also write the ending [ей] in feminine nouns with stems ending in [ж, ц, ч, ш, or щ], despite the ending of [a], not [я].

For example:

Nominative case noun	English translation	Instrumental case noun
----------------------	---------------------	------------------------

<i>nedelya</i> (неделя)	week	<i>nedeley</i> (неделей)
<i>tyotyа</i> (тётя)	aunt	<i>tyotey</i> (тётей)
<i>zemlya</i> (земля)	land	<i>zemlyoyu</i> (землёй)
<i>luzha</i> (лужа)	puddle	<i>luzhey</i> (лужей)
<i>roshcha</i> (роща)	grove	<i>roshchey</i> (рощей)
<i>gostinitsа</i> (гостиница)	hotel	<i>gostinitsey</i> (гостиницей)
<i>sem'ya</i> (семья)	family	<i>sem'yoу</i> (семьёй)

- [ь] changes to [ью]. For example:

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Instrumental case noun</b>
<i>tetrаd'</i> (тетрадь)	notebook	<i>tetrаd'yu</i> (тетрадьё)
<i>ploshchad'</i> (площадь)	square	<i>ploshchad'yu</i> (площадьё)
<i>noch'</i> (ночь)	night	<i>noch'yu</i> (ночьё)

- [ия] changes to [ией]. For example:

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Instrumental case noun</b>
<i>Italiya</i> (Италия)	Italy	<i>Italiyey</i> (Италией)
<i>auditoriya</i> (аудитория)	auditorium	<i>auditoriyey</i> (аудиторией)

**Neuter** nouns have the following endings:

- You need to add the ending [м] to the noun (regardless of the noun's ending). For example:

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Instrumental case noun</b>
-----------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------------

<i>okno</i> (окно)	window	<i>oknom</i> (окном)
<i>kreslo</i> (кресло)	armchair	<i>kreslom</i> (креслом)
<i>pis'mo</i> (письмо)	letter	<i>pis'tom</i> (письмом)
<i>pole</i> (поле)	field	<i>poluem</i> (полем)
<i>more</i> (море)	sea	<i>morem</i> (морем)
<i>zdaniye</i> (здание)	building	<i>zdaniyem</i> (зданием)

Neuter nouns ending in [мя] change [я] to [енем]. For example:

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Instrumental case noun</b>
<i>vremya</i> (время)	time	<i>vremenyem</i> (временем)
<i>imya</i> (имя)	name	<i>imenyem</i> (именем)
<i>plama</i> (пламя)	flame	<i>plamenyem</i> (пламенем)

Please note that masculine nouns ending in [а] or [я] (exceptional nouns), such as *papа* (*рапа*), meaning "father;" *dyadya* (*дядя*), meaning "uncle;" or *sluga* (*слуга*), meaning "servant," will have the endings [ой] and [ей], respectively (please see Lesson 2). For example:

<b>Nominative case noun</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Instrumental case noun</b>
<i>papa</i> (папа)	father	<i>papoy</i> (папой)
<i>dyadya</i> (дядя)	uncle	<i>dyadey</i> (дядей)
<i>sluga</i> (слуга)	servant	<i>slugoy</i> (службой)

The instrumental case is used when we want to describe the means by which a subject performs an action.

For example:

1. Студент пишет ручкой.  
*Student pishet ruchkoy.*  
"The student writes with a pen."

In this sentence, "a pen" is an instrument by which an action (writing) is performed. That's why it's put in the instrumental case.

1. Евгений хорошо рисует карандашом.  
*Yevgeniy khorosho risuyet karandashom.*  
"Eugene draws well with pencil."

"Pencil" is an instrument by which Eugene carries out the action of "drawing."

1. Мама режет сыр ножом.  
*Mama rezhets syr nozhom.*  
"Mom cuts the cheese with a knife."
2. Ты ешь салат ложкой или вилкой?  
*Ty yesh' salat lozhkoy ili vilkoy?*  
"Do you eat salad with a spoon or with a fork?"

## Language Tip

In our dialog, there is the verb уметь (*umet'*), meaning "to be able to, can." Let's see how it conjugates in the present tense.

Pronoun	Verb	Pronoun	Verb
Я	умею	Мы	умеем
ya	umeyu	my	umeyet
"I"	"can"	"we"	"can"

<b>Ты</b>	<b>умеешь</b>		<b>умеете</b>
<i>ty</i>	<i>umeysh'</i>	<b>Вы</b>	<i>umeyete</i>
"you"	"can"	<i>vy</i>	"can"
		"you" (pl)	
	<b>умеет</b>		<b>умеют</b>
<b>Он / Она / Оно</b>		<b>Они</b>	
<i>on / ona / ono</i>	<i>umeyet</i>	<i>oni</i>	<i>umeyut</i>
"he" / "she" / "it"	"can"	"they"	"can"

The word **уметь** (*umet'*), meaning "to be able to, can," requires a verb in the infinitive form after it.

The grammatical structure is:

*уметь* (*umet'*) + [verb in infinitive form]

For example:

1. Этот ребёнок не умеет читать.  
*Etot rebyonok ne umeyet chitat'.*  
"This child can't read."
2. Моя сестра умеет хорошо петь.  
*Moya sestra umeyet khorosho pet'.*  
"My sister can sing well."
3. Он умеет красиво танцевать.  
*On umeyet krasivo tantsevat'.*  
"He can dance very nicely."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Russian

## Painters

---

Everyone who is fond of painting knows such notable Russian painters as Ivan Aivazovsky, Valentin Serov, and Ivan Shishkin. Ivan Aivazovsky is a world-famous marine painter due to his amazing sea pieces. They say he created his masterpieces only from his memory, showing the different states of the sea with high accuracy. His most well-known painting is called *The Ninth Wave*. It shows the hope of people surviving after a heavy night storm. Now, this picture is in the Russian Museum, which is the first state museum of Russian fine arts in the country. Ivan Shishkin is a distinguished landscape painter. His work *Morning in a Pine Forest* was famous all over the Soviet Union and was often used as a picture on small carpets or towels. Despite the fact that four bears are drawn in this picture, people started to call it *Three Bears*.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #20

## Who Do You Want To Be in Russia?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# 20



# RUSSIAN

1. ЛЕРА: Алекс, кем ты мечтал стать в детстве?
2. АЛЕКС: Как и многие дети, космонавтом. Мечтал увидеть Землю с космоса, Луну, открыть новые планеты. А сейчас работаю менеджером, так что пришлось отложить мечту в долгий ящик. А ты?
3. ЛЕРА: Сначала я хотела стать врачом, потом поваром.
4. АЛЕКС: Жаль, что не стала, ведь у тебя золотые руки. Ты очень вкусно готовишь.

# ROMANIZATION

1. LERA: Aleks, kem ty mechtal stat' v detstve?
2. ALEKS: Kak i mnogiye deti, kosmonavtom. Mechtal uvidet' Zemlyu s kosmosa, Lunu, otkryt' novyye planety. A seychas rabotayu menedzherom, tak chto prishlos' otlozhit' mechtu v dolgiy yashchik. A ty?
3. LERA: Snachala ya khotela stat' vrachom, potom povarom.
4. ALEKS: Zhal', chto ne stala, ved' u tebya zolotyye ruki. Ty ochen' vkusno gotovish'.

# ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. LERA: Alex, what did you want to be in your childhood?
2. ALEX: A cosmonaut, like many other kids. I dreamed to see the Earth from space, to see the Moon, and to discover new planets. Now, I work as a manager, so I had to put off my dream. And you?
3. LERA: First, I wanted to become a doctor, then a cook.
4. ALEX: I wish you had become one, because you have a golden touch. You cook really delicious food.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
откладывать в долгий ящик	otkladyvat' v dolgiy yashchik	to put off	phrase	
пришлось	prishlos'	had to	verb	
вкусно	vkusno	tasty, delicious	adverb	
золотые руки	zolotyye ruki	golden touch, clever fingers (lit. "golden hands")	phrase	
детство	detstvo	childhood	noun	neuter
планета	planeta	Planet	noun	feminine
луна	luna	Moon	noun	feminine
космос	kosmos	space, universe, cosmos	noun	masculine
земля	zemlya	the Earth, land	noun	feminine

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Пошёл дождь и нам пришлось вернуться домой.</b>  <i>Poshol dozhd' i nam prishlos' vernut'sya domoy.</i></p> <p>"It started raining, so we had to return home."</p>	<p><b>О, это салат "Оливье"? - Очень вкусно.</b>  <i>O, eto salat "Oliv'ye"? - Ochen' vkusno.</i></p> <p>"Oh, is it Olivier salad?" - "Very tasty."</p>
<p><b>Моё детство прошло в деревне.</b>  <i>Moyo detstvo proshlo v derevne.</i></p> <p>"My childhood was spent in the village."</p>	<p><b>Марс часто называют: "Красная планета".</b>  <i>Mars chasto nazyvayut: "Krasnaya planeta".</i></p> <p>"Mars is often called the "Red Planet.""</p>
<p><b>Как ты думаешь, есть ли жизнь на луне?</b>  <i>Kak ty dumayesh', yest' li zhizn' na lune?</i></p> <p>"What do you think, is there life on the moon?"</p>	<p><b>Когда человек первый раз полетел в космос?</b>  <i>Kogda chelovek pervyy raz poletel v kosmos?</i></p> <p>"When did man first fly into space?"</p>
<p><b>Юрий Гагарин - первый советский космонавт.</b>  <i>Yuriy Gagarin - pervyy sovetskiy kosmonavt.</i></p> <p>"Yuri Gagarin was the first Soviet cosmonaut."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### золотые руки (*zolytyye ruki*)

The first key phrase for this lesson is золотые руки (*zolytyye ruki*), which was used in our dialog:

1. Жаль, что не стала, ведь у тебя золотые руки. Ты очень вкусно *ГОТОВИШЬ*.  
*Zhal', chto ne stala, ved' u tebya zolytyye ruki. Ty ochen' vkusno gotovish'.*  
 "I wish you had become one, because you have clever fingers. You cook very tastily."

This phrase can be translated as "clever fingers" or "golden touch." Now, let's break down this phrase into its components. The adjective золотые (*zolotyye*) means "golden," and the noun руки (*ruki*) means "hands." So, the literal translation of this phrase is "golden hands." This phrase is used in two cases:

1. When we want to emphasize that someone is a real professional in what he or she is doing.
2. When we want to point out that someone is able to succeed in any business he or she starts.

Please note that this phrase is related to professions connected to physical activity using the hands.

For example:

1. У Алины золотые руки. Она может сшить любое платье.  
*U Aliny zolotyye ruki. Ona mozhет sshit' lyuboye plat'ye.*  
"Alina has clever fingers. She can sew any dress."
2. Антон - работник-золотые руки, посмотри какой он сделал ремонт в своей квартире!  
*Anton - rabotnik-zolotyye ruki, posmotri kakoy on sdelał remont v svoey kvartire!*  
"Anton is a worker with clever fingers. Just look how he repaired his apartment!"

### **откладывать в долгий ящик (*otkladyvat' v dolgiy yashchik*)**

The second key phrase for this lesson is откладывать в долгий ящик (*otkladyvat' v dolgiy yashchik*), which can be translated as "to put off."

The phrase consists of four words: the preposition в (*v*), which means "in;" the verb откладывать (*otkladyvat'*), which means "to put off;" the adjective долгий (*dolgiy*), which means "long;" and the masculine noun ящик (*yashchik*), which means "box." So, the literal translation of this phrase is "to put off in a long box."

They say that more than three centuries ago, during the rule of Tsar Alexei Mikhailovich (father of Peter the Great), a long box was set near his palace, where everyone could put written messages for him. Even though the box filled very quickly, people had to wait a long

time till their questions were considered. However, this is just one controversial theory.

We use this phrase when business must be delayed for an unknown period of time. It expresses dissatisfaction and sometimes annoyance with the situation.

For example:

1. Решение налогового вопроса снова отложили в долгий ящик.  
*Resheniye nalogovogo voprosa snova otlozhili v dolgiy yashchik.*  
"Solving the tax issue was put off again."
2. Сделай домашнее задание сейчас, не откладывай в долгий ящик!  
*Sdelay domashneye zadaniye seychas, ne otkladyvay v dolgiy yashchik!*  
"Do your homework now—don't put it off!"

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson Is the Use of the Instrumental Case in Describing Professions**

**Как и многие дети, космонавтом.**

*Kak i mnogiye deti, kosmonavtom.*

**"A cosmonaut, like many other kids."**

---

In this lesson, we'll continue to study the instrumental case. From the previous lesson (Lesson 19), you found out one of the main uses of the instrumental case—to describe by what means or instrument an action is performed.

In this lesson we will study:

1. The use of the instrumental case for emphasizing an occupation or profession;
2. The use of the instrumental case in the grammatical structure "together with."

The instrumental case is used after the prepositions (с) or (со), with the meaning "with" or, in its grammatical structure, "together with someone." The word "together" is translated as вместе (*vmeste*), and the preposition "with" is translated as с (*s*) or со (*so*), depending on the

pronoun following the preposition. Please note that the preposition *co* (*so*) is used only before the pronoun *мно́й* (*mnoy*), meaning "me."

The grammatical structure is:

**вместе (*vmeste*) + (с)/(со) + [noun/pronoun in the instrumental case]**

The word *вместе* (*vmeste*), meaning "together," can be omitted.

Pronoun	Instrumental case pronoun	English translation
<i>Я</i> <i>ya</i> "I"	<i>мно́у</i> ( <i>мно́й</i> )	"me"
<i>Ты</i> <i>ty</i> "you"	<i>тобо́у</i> ( <i>тобо́й</i> )	"you"
<i>Он</i> <i>on</i> "he"	<i>n / im</i> ( <i>n / im</i> )	"him"
<i>Она</i> <i>ona</i> "she"	<i>n / yey</i> ( <i>n / ey</i> )	"her"
<i>Оно</i> <i>ono</i> "it"	<i>n / im</i> ( <i>n / im</i> )	"him"
<i>Мы</i> <i>my</i> "we"	<i>namí</i> ( <i>нами</i> )	"us"
<i>Вы</i> <i>vy</i> "you"	<i>vamí</i> ( <i>вами</i> )	"you"
<i>Они</i> <i>oni</i> "they"	<i>n / imi</i> ( <i>n / imi</i> )	"them"

For example:

1. Мы с дочкой поехали на море. /Мы вместе дочкой поехали на море.  
*My s dochkoy poyekhali na more. /My vmeste dochkoy poyekhali na more.*  
"My daughter and I went to the sea." / "I, together with my daughter, went to the sea."
2. Мои родители купили дом вместе с землей.  
*Moi roditeli kupili dom vmeste s zemley.*  
"My parents bought a house together with the land."
3. Кто пойдет вместе со мной в магазин?  
*Kto poydet vmeste so mnoy v magazin?*  
"Who will go together with me to the store?"
4. Ты пойдёшь со мной на концерт?  
*Ty poydyosh' so mnoy na kontsert?*  
"Will you go with me to the concert?"
5. Добрый день. Елена дома?  
- Нет, она ушла с сестрой в кинотеатр.  
*Dobryy den'. Yelena doma?*  
- *Net, ona ushla s sestroy v kinoteatr.*  
"Good afternoon. Is Elena at home?"  
- "No, she went with her sister to the cinema."
6. Попробуйте салат с сыром, он очень вкусный.  
*Poprobuyte salat s syrom, on ochen' vkusnyy.*  
"Please try a salad with cheese. It's very delicious."
7. Эта квартира с большим балконом и кондиционером.  
*Eta kvartira s bol'shim balkonom i konditsionerom.*  
"This apartment comes with a large balcony and air conditioner."

The instrumental case is used with nouns following the verbs становиться / стать (*stanovit'sya / stat'*), meaning "to become;" быть (*byt'*), meaning "to be;" and работать (*rabotat'*), meaning "to work," if such nouns refer to a state of being, an occupation, a function, or a status. The instrumental case is widely used to describe one's job. The above-mentioned verbs don't require any prepositions after them.

For example:

1. Он работает учителем в школе.  
*On rabotayet uchitelem v shkole.*  
"He works as a teacher at school."
2. В будущем она хочет стать финансистом.  
*V budushchem ona khochet stat' finansistom.*  
"In the future, she wants to become a financier."
3. Гусеница становится бабочкой.  
*Gusenitsa stanovitsya babochkoy.*  
"The caterpillar becomes a butterfly."
4. Я работаю в компании "ASC" менеджером.  
*Ya rabotayu v kompanii "ASC" menedzherom.*  
"I work in the ASC company as a manager."
5. Кем ты хочешь быть? - Я хочу переводчиком.  
*Kem ty khochesh' byt'? - Ya khochu perevodchikom.*  
"What do you want to be?" - "I want to be a translator."
6. Мой дедушка был художником.  
*Moy dedushka byl khudozhnikom.*  
"My grandfather was a painter."

## Language Expansion

---

Do you know why понедельник (*ponedel'nik*), meaning "Monday," is called понедельник, and среда (*sreda*), meaning "Wednesday," is called среда? The names of the days of the week derive from ancient Russian and have their own meanings.

Thus, the word понедельник (*ponedel'nik*), meaning "Monday," came from the word неделя (*nedelya*), meaning "week," since it starts the week.

Вторник, meaning "Tuesday;" четверг, meaning "Thursday;" and пятница, meaning "Friday" are derived from the words второй, meaning "second;" четвёртый meaning "fourth;"



and пятый, meaning "fifth." It's simple! The word среда meaning "Wednesday," was formed from the adjective средний, meaning "middle," as it's situated in the middle of the week. The word воскресенье meaning "Sunday," means "resurrection," and суббота, meaning "Saturday," came from "Sabbath."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Russian Cosmonauts

---

One of the most famous cosmonauts in the world is the Soviet pilot Yuriy Gagarin. On April 12, 1961, he managed to make a journey into outer space for 108 minutes and thus became the first human in the world to do it. Because of this event, April 12 is considered to be Cosmonautics Day, which is celebrated in Russia as well as in some other former Soviet Union countries. He died in 1968 in a plane crash during a training flight of the MiG-15UT. The reasons for and circumstances of his death are not clear even today, and they are the subject of many theories. Many Soviet boys of that time dreamed to grow up and be cosmonauts, just like him. It was probably the most common dream of that time.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #21

## Getting Your Driver's License in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 11 Cultural Insight

# 21

# RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Лера, я наконец-то сдал экзамен на права!
2. ЛЕРА: О, поздравляю! Я знаю, что это сложный экзамен и многие его сразу не сдают. Где ты готовился к экзамену?
3. АЛЕКС: В центральной автошколе.
4. ЛЕРА: Так это же в двух шагах от твоего дома!
5. АЛЕКС: Конечно. Поэтому я и выбрал её . Кстати, мы с друзьями сейчас идём в японский ресторан. Присоединяйся, отметим вместе!
6. ЛЕРА: Уже бегу!

# ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Lera, ya nakonets-to sdal ekzamen na prava!
2. LERA: O, pozdravlyayu! Ya znayu, chto eto slozhnyy ekzamen i mnogiye yego srazu ne sdayut. Gde ty gotovilsya k ekzamenu?
3. ALEKS: V tsentral'noy avtoshkole.
4. LERA: Tak eto zhe v dvukh shagakh ot tvoyego doma!
5. ALEKS: Konechno. Poetomu ya i vybral yeyo . Kstati, my s druz'yami seychas idyom v yaponskiy restoran. Prisoyedinyaysya, otmetim vmeste!

CONT'D OVER

6. LERA: Uzhe begu!

## ENGLISH

1. ALEX: Lera, I finally passed the exam for a driver's license!
2. LERA: Oh, congratulations! I know it's a difficult exam, and not so many people pass it. Where did you prepare for the exam?
3. ALEX: At the central driving school.
4. LERA: It's just a stone's throw away from your home!
5. ALEX: Of course. That's why I chose it. By the way, my friends and I are going now to a Japanese restaurant. Join us! Let's celebrate together!
6. LERA: On my way!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
отмечать	otmechat'	to celebrate, to mark	verb	
поздравлять	pozdravlyat'	to congratulate	verb	
сдать	sdat'	to pass, to rent	verb	
(водительские) права	(voditel'skiye) prava	(driving) licence, rights	noun	plural

готовиться	gotovit'sya	to prepare	verb	
экзамен	ekzamen	exam	noun	masculine
присоединяться	prisoyedinyat'sya	to join	verb	
я	а			
в двух шагах от	v dvukh shagakh ot	within a stone's throw (away)	phrase	
сложный	slozhnyy	complicated, difficult	adjective	masculine
центральный	tsyentral'nyy	central	adjective	masculine

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Как ты будешь отмечать свой день рождения?</b></p> <p><i>Kak ty budesh' otmechat' svoy den' rozhdeniya?</i></p> <p>"How will you celebrate your birthday?"</p>	<p><b>Он поздравил меня с Днём Рождения по телефону.</b></p> <p><i>On pozdravil menya s dnyom rozhdeniya po telefonu.</i></p> <p>"He congratulated me on my birthday over the phone."</p>
<p><b>Чтобы поступить в университет нужно хорошо сдать экзамены.</b></p> <p><i>Chtoby postupit' v universitet nuzhno khorosho sdat' ekzameny.</i></p> <p>"To enter university one should do well on the exams."</p>	<p><b>Не все граждане знают свои права.</b></p> <p><i>Ne vse grazhdane znayut svoi prava.</i></p> <p>"Not all citizens are aware of their rights."</p>
<p><b>Андрей готовится стать отцом, скоро у него будет сын.</b></p> <p><i>"Andrew is preparing to become a father, soon he'll have a son."</i></p> <p>Andrey gotovitsya stat' ottsom, skoro u nego budet syn.</p>	<p><b>Ненавижу экзамены! Я всегда очень нервничаю!</b></p> <p><i>Nenavizhu ekzameny! Ya vseгда ochen' nervnichayu!</i></p> <p>"I hate exams! I'm always so nervous!"</p>

**Ты любишь его или нет? -Ну, это сложный вопрос...**

*Ty lyubish' yego ili net? -Nu, eto slozhnyy vopros...*

"Do you love him or not?" - "Well, that's a difficult question..."

**Где находится центральный банк?**

*Gde nahoditsya tsyentral'nyy bank?*

"Where's the central bank situated?"

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **в двух шагах от (*v dvukh shagakh ot*)**

The first key phrase for this lesson is **в двух шагах от (*v dvukh shagakh ot*)**, which can be translated into English as "within a stone's throw from."

Let's look at an example from the dialog:

1. Так это же в двух шагах от твоего дома!  
*Tak eto zhe v dvukh shagakh ot tvoyego doma!*  
"It's just a stone's throw from your home!"

The preposition **в (*v*)** means "in," the number **двух (*dvukh*)** means "two," and the plural noun **шагах (*shagakh*)** means "steps." And last, the preposition **от (*ot*)** means "from." So, this phrase literally means "in two steps from." The phrase is used when we want to say that something is located so near that it doesn't take any time or energy to get there, as if we really need to take only two steps to reach it. Following this phrase, a noun in the genitive case is used.

For example:

1. Метро находится в двух шагах от моего дома.  
*Metro nakhoditsya v dvukh shagakh ot moyego doma.*  
"The metro is within a stone's throw from my house."
2. Больница находится в двух шагах от школы.  
*Bol'nitsa nakhoditsya v dvukh shagakh ot shkoly.*  
"The hospital is within a stone's throw from school."

## отмечать (*otmechat'*)

The next key word for this lesson is the verb отмечать (*otmechat'*), which can be translated as "to celebrate."

For example:

1. Как ты будешь отмечать свой День Рождения?  
*Kak ty budesh' otmechat' svoy Den' Rozhdeniya?*  
"How will you celebrate your birthday?"
2. Новый Год я отметил в кафе с друзьями.  
*Novyy God ya otmetil v kafe s druz'yami.*  
"I celebrated the New Year with my friends at a café."

Another meaning of this word is "to mark," in the sense of taking written notes about some information.

For example:

1. Я отметил этот день в своём календаре.  
*Ya otmetil etot den' v svoym kalendare.*  
"I marked this day on my calendar."
2. В тесте: "Отметьте правильные ответы."  
*V teste: "Otmet'ite pravil'nyye otvety."*  
"In the test: 'Mark the correct answers.'"

## GRAMMAR

**The Focuses of This Lesson Are the Prepositional and Accusative Cases of Singular Adjectives in Russian**

**Где ты готовился к экзамену?**

**-В центральной автошколе.**

***Gde ty gotovilsya k ekzamenu?***

***-V tsentral'noy avtoshkole.***

**"Where did you prepare for the exam?"**

**- "At the central driving school."**

In this lesson, you'll start to learn about the prepositional and accusative cases of singular adjectives in Russian. Remember that all adjectives should agree with nouns according to gender, number, and case. This means that if a noun is in the prepositional or accusative case, the adjective should also be put in that case. The questions for the prepositional case for a singular adjective are (O) *Каком?* ((O) *Каком?*) for the masculine and neuter genders and (O) *Какой?* ((O) *Какой?*) for the feminine gender. The questions can be translated into English as "which?" The questions of the accusative case for a singular adjective are *Какой?* (*Какой?*) and *Какого?* (*Какого?*) for the masculine gender, *Какое?* (*Какое?*) for the neuter gender, and *Какую?* (*Какую?*) for the feminine gender. These questions can be translated into English as "what?"

### Formation of Adjectives in the Prepositional Case

First, let's have a closer look at **masculine and neuter adjective endings**, which follow the same rule. The adjectives ending in hard consonants have the following endings.

- If an adjective in singular form has the ending [ый], [ой], or [ое], you need to change the ending to [ом]. For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Prepositional case adjective
<i>новуу (новый)</i>	"new"	<i>новом (новом)</i>
<i>старуу (старый)</i>	"old"	<i>старом (старом)</i>
<i>красивоуе (красивое)</i>	"beautiful"	<i>красивом (красивом)</i>
<i>молодоу (молодой)</i>	"young"	<i>молодом (молодом)</i>

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a soft consonant or ж, ч, ш, щ and having an unstressed ending will have the ending [ем]. For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Prepositional case adjective
---------------------------	---------------------	------------------------------



( <b>синий</b> ) <i>siniy</i>	"blue"	( <b>синем</b> ) <i>sinem</i>
( <b>свежий</b> ) <i>svezhiy</i>	"fresh"	( <b>свежем</b> ) <i>svezhem</i>
( <b>будущий</b> ) <i>budushchiy</i>	"future"	( <b>будущем</b> ) <i>budushchem</i>
( <b>хорошее</b> ) <i>khorosheye</i>	"good"	( <b>хорошем</b> ) <i>khoroshem</i>
( <b>рабочее</b> ) <i>rabocheye</i>	"working"	( <b>рабочем</b> ) <i>rabochem</i>

If the ending of an adjective is stressed, the ending will be [ом]. For example, **большой** (*bol'shoy*), meaning "big," changes to **большом** (*bol'shom*), and **чужой** (*chuzhoy*), meaning "foreign," changes to **чужом** (*chuzhom*).

**Feminine adjectives** have the following endings:

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a hard consonant change their ending to [ой].

For example:

<b>Nominative case adjective</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Prepositional case adjective</b>
<i>tyoplaya</i> (тёплая)	"warm"	<i>tyoploy</i> (тёплой)
<i>molodaya</i> (молодая)	"young"	<i>molodoy</i> (молодой)
<i>krasivaya</i> (красивая)	"beautiful"	<i>krasivoy</i> (красивой)

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a soft consonant or ж, ч, ш, щ and having an unstressed ending will have the ending [ей]. For example:

<b>Nominative case adjective</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Prepositional case adjective</b>
<i>sinyaya</i> (синяя)	"blue"	<i>siney</i> (синей)
<i>svezhaya</i> (свежая)	"fresh"	<i>svezhey</i> (свежей)

If the ending of an adjective is stressed, the ending will be [ой]. For example: **большая** (*bol'shaya*), meaning "big," changes to **большой** (*bol'shoy*), and **чужая** (*chuzhaya*), meaning "foreign," changes to **чужой** (*chuzhoy*).

For example:

1. Я живу в Восточной Европе.  
*Ya zhivu v Vostochnoy Yevrope.*  
"I live in Eastern Europe."
2. Александр Павлович работает в торговой компании.  
*Aleksandr Pavlovich rabotayet v trgovoy kompanii.*  
"Alexander Pavlovich works at a trading company."
3. Ты живешь в таком большом и красивом доме?  
*Ty zhivesh' v takom bol'shom i krasivom dome?*  
"You live in such a large and beautiful house."
4. Я сейчас нахожусь на железнодорожной станции.  
*Ya seychas nakhozhus' na zheleznodorozhnoy stantsii.*  
"I'm now at the railway station."

## Formation of Adjectives in the Accusative Case

The accusative case forms of **masculine adjectives** depend on whether the adjective is related to an animate or an inanimate noun. The endings of all inanimate masculine adjectives and all neuter adjectives are similar to the nominative case. The endings of all masculine adjectives related to animate nouns will be [oro] or [ero], following the same rules as for the prepositional case.

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Accusative case adjective
новуу (НОВЫЙ)	"new"	нового (НОВОГО)

<i>siniy</i> (синий)	"blue"	<i>sinego</i> (синего)
<i>krasivyi</i> (красивый)	"beautiful"	<i>krasivogo</i> (красивого)
<i>khoroshiy</i> (хороший)	"good"	<i>khoroshego</i> (хорошего)
<i>bol'shoy</i> (большой)	"big"	<i>bol'shogo</i> (большого)

**Feminine adjectives** have the following endings:

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a hard consonant change their ending to [yу].

For example:

<b>Nominative case adjective</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Accusative case adjective</b>
<i>zolotaya</i> (золотая)	"gold"	<i>zolotuyu</i> (золотую)
<i>svetlaya</i> (светлая)	"light"	<i>svetluyu</i> (светлую)
<i>radostnaya</i> (радостная)	"glad"	<i>radostnuyu</i> (радостную)

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a soft consonant will have the ending [yю]. For example, **СИНЯЯ** (*sinyaya*), meaning "blue," becomes **СИНЮЮ** (*sinyuyu*).

Here are more examples:

1. Вчера я увидел нового *начальника*.  
*Vchera ya uvidel novogo nachal'nika.*  
"Yesterday, I saw a new chief."

In this sentence, we used the ending [oro] because the noun "chief" is an animate noun.

1. Родители купили новый *дом*.  
*Roditeli kupili novyy dom.*  
"My parents bought a new house."

In this sentence, the adjective "new" was used with the ending (as in the nominative case) because the related noun "house" is inanimate.

1. Я хочу снять недорогую квартиру.  
*Ya khochu snyat' nedoroguyu kvartiru.*  
"I want to rent a cheap apartment."
2. Вчера на вечеринке я встретил знаменитого певца.  
*Vchera na vecherinke ya vstretil znamenitogo pevtsa.*  
"Yesterday, at a party, I met a famous singer."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Driver's Licenses in Russia

---

To drive a car, one should have a driver's license, which, in Russian, is called a *prava* (права) for short. Of course, this is not the official name, but the people's one. In Russian, there are nine categories of vehicles that require a driver's license, including motorbikes and trucks with trailers. Traffic drives on the right and passes on the left. Russian laws are very strict on drivers who drive a vehicle while intoxicated from alcohol. The punishment can be really severe—up to two years' suspension of a driver's licence.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #22

## Changing Jobs in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# 22

## RUSSIAN

1. ЛЕРА: Алекс, я слышала ты поменял работу?
2. АЛЕКС: Да, теперь я работаю главным менеджером международной торговой компании.
3. ЛЕРА: И как?
4. АЛЕКС: Мне нравится. Работа стабильная, зарплата высокая. От дома до офиса рукой подать. Раз в год лучшим сотрудникам выплачивают премию.
5. ЛЕРА: Да...Ты теперь работаешь бок о бок с профессионалами. Поздравляю!

## ROMANIZATION

1. LERA: Aleks, ya slyshala ty pomenyal rabotu?
2. ALEKS: Da, teper' ya rabotayu glavnyim menedzherom mezhdunarodnoy trgovoy kompanii.
3. LERA: I kak?
4. ALEKS: Mne nravitsya. Rabota stabil'naya, zarplata vysokaya. Ot doma do ofisa rukoy podat'. Raz v god luchshim sotrudnikam vyplachivayut premiyu.
5. LERA: Da...Ty teper' rabotayesh' bok o bok s professionalami. Pozdravlyayu!

## ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. LERA: Alex, I heard you changed your job?
2. ALEX: Yes, now I work as a general manager of an international trading company.
3. LERA: And how is it?
4. ALEKS: I like it. The job is stable, and the salary is high. It's no distance between the office and my home. Once a year, the best employees are paid a bonus.
5. LERA: Yes...You're now working side by side with professionals. Congratulations!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
рукой подать	rukoj podat'	It's no distance	phrase	
сотрудник	sotrudnik	co-worker, employee	noun	masculine
премия	premiya	award, bonus	noun	feminine
выплачивать	vyplachivat'	pay (out)	verb	
слышать	slyshat'	to hear	verb	
главный	glavnyy	main, head, chief	adjective	masculine
торговый	torgovyy	trading	adjective	masculine
бок о бок	bok o bok	side by side	phrase	
профессионал	professional	professional	noun	masculine

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

**На Новый Год все сотрудники получили премию.**

*Na Novyy God vse sotrudniki poluchili premiyu.*

"On New Year's Day all employees received the bonus."

**В связи с кризисом премии в этом году не будет.**

*V svyazi s krizisom premii v etom godu ne budet.*

"Because of the crisis there will be no bonus this year."

**В кризис многие компании не выплачивали зарплату.**

*V krizis mnogiye kompanii ne vyplachivali zarplatu.*

"During the crisis, many companies did not pay a salary."

**Ты слышишь этот звук?**

*Ty slyshish' etot zvuk?*

"Do you hear that sound?"

**Я много о вас слышал.**

*Ya mnogo o vas slyshal.*

"I've heard a lot about you."

**Главный офис нашей компании находится в Санкт-Петербурге.**

*Glavnyy ofis nashey kompanii nakhoditsya v Sankt-Peterburge.*

"The head office of our company is located in St. Petersburg."

**В этом году в Москве откроется новое торговое представительство нашей компании.**

*V etom godu v Moskve otkroyetsya novoye torgovoye predstavitel'stvo nashey kompanii.*

"This year a trade representation of our company will be opened in Moscow."

**Нашей компании нужны только профессионалы!**

*Nashey kompanii nuzhny tol'ko professionaly!*

"Our company needs only professionals!"

**Я не люблю приключения, мне нужна спокойная, стабильная жизнь.**

*Ya ne lyublyu priklyucheniya, mne nuzhna spokoynaya, stabil'naya zhizn'.*

"I don't like adventures. I need a quiet, stable life."



# VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

## **рукой подать (*rukoy podat'*)**

The first key phrase for this lesson is *рукой подать (rukoy podat')*, which can be translated into English as "it's no distance" or "within a stone's throw from."

Let's look at an example from the dialog:

1. От дома до офиса рукой подать  
*Ot doma do ofisa rukoy podat'.*  
"It's no distance between the office and my home."

The noun *рукой (rukoy)* (instrumental case) means "by hand," whereas the verb *подать (podat')* means "to give." So, this phrase literally means "to give by hand." The phrase is used when we want to say that something is located very close, and not far away. It's enough just to hold out your hand to reach it. Following this phrase, a noun in the genitive case is used.

For example:

1. От дома до магазина рукой подать.  
*Ot doma do magazina rukoy podat'.*  
"It's no distance between home and the store."
2. От станции метро до офиса рукой подать.  
*Ot stantsii metro do ofisa rukoy podat'.*  
"The office is a stone's throw away from the metro station."

## **бок о бок (*bok o bok*)**

This can be translated into English as "side by side." Let's look at an example from the dialog:

1. Ты теперь работаешь бок о бок с профессионалами  
*Ty teper' rabotayesh' bok o bok s professionalami.*  
"You're now working side by side with professionals."

Lets see what parts this phrase consists of. The noun *бок (bok)* means "side," whereas the preposition *о (o)* means "by." So, this phrase literally means "side by side," exactly like in

English. The phrase is used in two situations:

1) When we want to point out that some people are living together or are very close to one another (in distance).

For example:

1. Ты знаешь Анну?  
- Да, мы прожили в общежитии бок о бок 3 года.  
*Ty znayesh' Annu?*  
- *Da, my prozhili v obshchezhitii bok o bok 3 goda.*  
"Do you know Anna?"  
- "Yes, we lived in a dormitory side by side for three years."

2) бок о бок is also used with the meaning of "together."

For example:

1. Много лет я работал с ним бок о бок.  
*Mnogo let ya rabotal s nim bok o bok.*  
"For many years, I worked with him side by side."

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focuses of This Lesson Are the Dative and Instrumental Cases of Singular Adjectives in Russian**

**Да, теперь я работаю главным менеджером международной торговой компании.**

***Da, teper' ya rabotayu glavnym menedzherom mezhdunarodnoy trgovoy kompanii.***  
**"Yes, now I work as a general manager of an international trading company."**

---

In this lesson, you'll start to learn about the dative and instrumental cases of singular adjectives in Russian. The questions of the dative case of a singular adjective are *Какому* (*Kakomu?*) for the masculine and neuter genders and *Какой* (*Kakoy?*) for the feminine gender. These can be translated into English as "to which/what?" The questions of the

instrumental case of a singular adjective are **Каким?** (*Kakim?*) for the masculine and neuter genders and **Какой?** (*Kakoy?*) for the feminine gender. These can be translated into English as "by what?"

## Formation of Adjectives in the Dative Case

Now, let's have a closer look at **masculine and neuter adjective endings**, which follow the same rule.

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a hard consonant have the ending [ому]. For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Dative case adjective
<i>chernyy</i> (черный)	"black"	<i>chernomu</i> (черному)
<i>molodoy</i> (молодой)	"young"	<i>molodomu</i> (молодому)
<i>dorogoye</i> (дорогое)	"expensive"	<i>dorogomu</i> (дорогому)

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a soft consonant (ж, ч, ш, and щ) and with an unstressed ending have the ending [ему]. For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Dative case adjective
<i>siniy</i> (синий)	"blue"	<i>sinemu</i> (синему)
<i>vecherniy</i> (вечерний)	"evening"	<i>vechernemu</i> (вечернему)
<i>letneye</i> (летнее)	"summery"	<i>letnemu</i> (летнему)
<i>mladshiy</i> (младший)	"younger"	<i>mladshemu</i> (младшему)
<i>obshcheye</i> (общее)	"common"	<i>obshchemu</i> (общему)

If the ending of an adjective is stressed, the ending changes to [ому]. For example, **большой** (*bol'shoy*), meaning "big," becomes **большому** (*bol'shom*), and **чужой** (*chuzhoy*), meaning "foreign," becomes **чужому** (*chuzhom*).

**Feminine adjectives** have the following endings:

- Adjectives with stems ending in hard consonants change their endings to [ой]

For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Dative case adjective
<i>bystraya</i> (быстрая)	"fast"	<i>bystroy</i> (быстрой)
<i>vesyolaya</i> (весёлая)	"cheerful"	<i>vesyoloy</i> (весёлой)
<i>dobraya</i> (добрая)	"kind"	<i>dobroy</i> (доброй)

- Adjectives with stems ending in soft consonants (ж, ч, ш, and щ), with unstressed endings, have the ending [ей]. For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Dative case adjective
<i>sinaya</i> (синяя)	"blue"	<i>siney</i> (синей)
<i>svezhaya</i> (свежая)	"fresh"	<i>svezhey</i> (свежей)
<i>khoroshaya</i> (хорошая)	"good"	<i>khoroshey</i> (хорошей)

If the ending of an adjective is stressed, the ending becomes [ой]. For example, **большая** (*bol'shaya*), meaning "big," changes to **большой** (*bol'shoy*), and **чужая** (*chuzhaya*), meaning "foreign," changes to **чужой** (*chuzhoy*).

For example:

1. Я ищу подарок младшему брату.  
*Ya ishchu podarok mladshemu bratu.*  
"I'm looking for a present for my younger brother."
2. Студенты готовятся к сложному экзамену.  
*Studenty gotovyatsya k slozhnomu ekzameni.*  
"The students are preparing for a difficult exam."

3. Я хочу написать письмо своему бывшему преподавателю.  
*Ya khochu napisat' pis'mo svoyetu byvshemu prepodavatelyu.*  
 "I want to write a letter to my former teacher."

## Instrumental Case

Now, let's have a closer look at **masculine and neuter adjective endings**, which follow the same rules.

-Adjectives ending in hard consonants have the ending **[ым]**. For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Dative case adjective
<i>belyu (белый)</i>	"white"	<i>belym (белым)</i>
<i>grustnyu (грустный)</i>	"sad"	<i>grustnym (грустным)</i>
<i>interesnyu (интересный)</i>	"interesting"	<i>интересным (интересным)</i>

-Adjectives with stems ending in soft consonants have the ending **[им]**:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Dative case adjective
<i>siniy (синий)</i>	"blue"	<i>sinemu (синим)</i>
<i>vecherniy (вечерний)</i>	"evening"	<i>vechernemu (вечерним)</i>
<i>letneye (летнее)</i>	"summery"	<i>letnemu (летним)</i>

**Feminine adjectives** have the following endings:

- Adjectives with stems ending in hard consonants change their endings to [ой].

For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Instrumental case adjective
<i>tyoplaya</i> (тёплая)	"warm"	<i>tyoploy</i> (тёплой)
<i>molodaya</i> (молодая)	"young"	<i>molodoy</i> (молодой)
<i>krasivaya</i> (красивая)	"beautiful"	<i>krasivoй</i> (красивой)

- Adjectives with stems ending in soft consonants (ж, ч, ш, and щ) and with unstressed endings have the ending [ей]. For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Instrumental case adjective
<i>sinaya</i> (синяя)	"blue"	<i>siney</i> (синей)
<i>svezhaya</i> (свежая)	"fresh"	<i>svezhey</i> (свежей)
<i>khoroshaya</i> (хорошая)	"good"	<i>khoroshey</i> (хорошей)

If the ending of an adjective is stressed, the ending changes to [ой]. For example, **большая** (*bol'shaya*), meaning "big," becomes **большой** (*bol'shoy*), and **чужая** (*chuzhaya*), meaning "foreign," becomes **чужой** (*chuzhoy*).

For example:

1. Я хочу быть профессиональным переводчиком.  
*Ya khochu byt' professional'nyy perevodchikom.*  
"I want to be a professional translator."
2. Отметьте правильный ответ синей ручкой.  
*Otmet'te pravil'nyy otvet siney ruchkoy.*  
"Mark the correct answer with a blue pen."
3. Мы с новой подругой пошли в кино.  
*My s novoу podrugoy poshli v kino.*  
"My new friends and I went to the cinema."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

## Jobs in Russia

---

It's interesting to know that, despite Russians paying high tuitions each year to study in prestigious departments, such as law or economics, data from the Federal State Statistic Service show that about 60 percent of the population work in jobs unrelated to the qualifications they received. Young people from 16 to 24 can find jobs much more quickly (within seven months) than, for example, specialists from 30 to 40 years old, who need up to nine months to get a position. However, more than 75 percent of the population are satisfied with their working regimens. The working day in Russia is eight hours, and many people don't work overtime.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #23

## Don't Catch a Cold in Russia!

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# 23



# RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС:                    Добрый день, можно зайти?
2. ДОКТОР:                Здравствуйте, проходите, садитесь пожалуйста. На что жалуетесь?
3. АЛЕКС:                    У меня болит голова, горло. Время от времени я кашляю.
4. ДОКТОР:                Понятно. Откройте рот, пожалуйста. Покажите язык. Ага, у вас обычная простуда. Вот лекарство. Принимайте его два раза в день.
5. АЛЕКС:                    Спасибо.
6. ДОКТОР:                Пожалуйста. Выздоровливайте!

# ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS:                    Dobryy den', mozhno zayti?
2. DOKTOR:                Zdravstvuyte, prokhodite, sadites' pozhaluysta. Na chto zhaluyetes'?
3. ALEKS:                    U menya bolit golova, gorlo. Vremya ot vremeni ya kashlyayu.
4. DOKTOR:                Ponyatno. Otkroyte rot, pozhaluysta. Pokazhite yazyk. Aga, u vas obychnaya prostuda. Vot lekarstvo. Prinimayte yego dva raza v den'.
5. ALEKS:                    Spasibo.
6. DOKTOR:                Pozhaluysta. Vyzdoravlivayte!

# ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. ALEX: Good afternoon. Can I enter?
2. DOCTOR: Hello, come in. Sit down, please. What's your complaint?
3. ALEX: I have a headache and a sore throat. From time to time, I cough.
4. DOCTOR: I see. Open your mouth, please. Show your tongue. Yes, you have an ordinary cold. Here's the medicine. Take it twice a day.
5. ALEX: Thank you.
6. DOCTOR: You're welcome. Get better soon!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
принимать	prinimat'	to take, to accept	Verb	
кашлять	kashlyat'	to cough	verb	
горло	gorlo	throat	noun	neuter
лекарство	lekarstvo	medicine, cure	noun	neuter
время от времени	vremya ot vremeni	from time to time	phrase	
зайти	zayti	to enter, to drop in	verb	
жаловаться	zhalovat'sa	to complain	verb	
болеть	bolet'	to be ill	verb	
голова	galava	head	noun	feminine

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Мы посоветовались и решили принять ваше предложение.</b></p> <p><i>My posovetovalis' i reshili prinyat' vashe predlozheniye.</i></p> <p>"We discussed it and decided to accept your offer."</p>	<p><b>Многие курильщики сильно кашляют.</b></p> <p><i>Mnogiye kuril'shchiki sil'no kashlyayut.</i></p> <p>"Many smokers cough badly."</p>
<p><b>У меня болит горло.</b></p> <p><i>U menya bolit gorlo.</i></p> <p>"I've got a sore throat."</p>	<p><b>Ученые пытаются найти лекарство от рака.</b></p> <p><i>Uchenyye pytayutsya nayti lekarstvo ot raka.</i></p> <p>"Scientists are trying to find a cure for cancer."</p>
<p><b>Я не могу зайти на свою страницу в Фейсбуке, что делать?</b></p> <p><i>Ya ne mogu zayti na svoyu stranitsu vFeysbuke, chto delat'?</i></p> <p>"I can't enter my page on Facebook, what to do?"</p>	<p><b>Он постоянно жалуется на жизнь.</b></p> <p><i>On postoyanno zhaluetsa na zhizn'.</i></p> <p>"He complains about life all the time."</p>
<p><b>В последнее время бабушка стала часто болеть.</b></p> <p><i>V posledneye vremya babushka stala chasto bolet'.</i></p> <p>"Recently my grandmother started to be ill often."</p>	<p><b>Ребёнок ударился головой и расплакался.</b></p> <p><i>Rebyonok udarilsya golovoy i rasplakalsya.</i></p> <p>"The child hit his head and started crying."</p>
<p><b>У Сергея болит голова.</b></p> <p><i>U Sergeya bolit golova.</i></p> <p>"Sergey has a headache."</p>	<p><b>Это не похоже на обычную простуду. Может, у тебя грипп?</b></p> <p><i>Eto ne pokhozhe na obychnuyu prostudu. Mozhet, u tebya gripp?</i></p> <p>"It doesn't look like a simple cold. What if it's a flu?"</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

## **время от времени (*vremya ot vremeni*)**

This can be translated into English as "from time to time." This phrase consists of three words: the word *время* (*vremya*), meaning "time," in the nominative case; the word "time" in the genitive case; and the preposition *от* (*ot*), which is translated as "from." So, the phrase literally means exactly the same as in English: "from time to time." This phrase is used when we want to express that something happens irregularly, sometimes, or even seldom.

For example:

1. **Вы часто встречаетесь?**  
- Нет, время от времени.  
*Vy chasto vstrechayetes'?*  
- Нет, время от времени.  
"Do you meet often?"  
- "No, from time to time."
2. **Время от времени он заходит в магазин, чтоб купить какую-нибудь новую книгу.**  
*Vremya ot vremeni on zakhodit v magazin, chtob kupit' kakuyu-nibud' novoyu knigu.*  
"From time to time, he drops into the store to buy a new book."

## **принимать (*prinimat'*)**

The next key word for this lesson is *принимать* (*prinimat'*), which can be translated as "to take" or "to accept." This word has several meanings with which it is widely used in daily conversation.

1. It means "to take" in such expressions as "to take a shower," "to take a bathroom break," "to take an exam," "to take a decision," and "to take part."

For example:

1. **Ты уже принял душ?**  
*Ty uzhe prinyal dush?*  
"Have you already taken a shower?"

2. Многие врачи считают, что нельзя принимать ванну, когда *болеешь*.  
*Mnogiye vrachi schitayut, chto nel'zya prinimat' vannu, kogda boleyesh'.*  
"Many doctors believe that one shouldn't take a bath while sick."
3. Я не могу так быстро принять решение о *разводе*.  
*Ya ne mogu tak bystro prinyat' resheniye o razvode.*  
"I can't take a decision about divorce so quickly."
4. Я хочу принять участие в этих *соревнованиях*.  
*Ya khochu prinyat' uchastiye v etikh sorevnovaniyakh*  
"I want to take part in these competitions."

2. It also means "to accept" or "to admit." It's widely used in such expressions as "to accept an offer."

For example:

1. Мы приняли ваше предложение и согласны сотрудничать.  
*My prinyali vashe predlozheniye i soglasny sotrudnichat'.*  
"We have accepted your offer and agree to cooperate."
2. Меня приняли в члены международной ассоциации.  
*Menya prinyali v chleny mezhdunarodnoy assotsiatsii.*  
"I was admitted as a member of the international association."

3. It means "to receive." For example:

1. Примите, пожалуйста, *факс*.  
*Primate, pozhaluysta, faks.*  
"Please receive the fax."

## GRAMMAR

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Grammar Structure "It's Allowed/It's Not Allowed"**

**Добрый день, можно зайти?**

*Dobryu den', mozhno zayti?*

"Good afternoon, can I enter?"

---

## Grammatical Structure

---

*Здесь можно курить?*

*Zdes' mozhno kurit'?*

"Is smoking allowed here?"

- *Да, можно.*

*Da, mozhno.*

- "Yes, it is."

- "No, it is not."

- *Нет, нельзя.*

*Net, nel'zya.*

---

This grammar point is quite simple. The word *можно* (*mozhno*) could be translated as "may," "can," or a phrase such as "it's allowed," "it's possible," "it's permitted," or "one can." The word *нельзя* (*nel'zya*) has exactly the opposite meaning: "it's not permitted," "it's not allowed," "it's impossible," or "must not."

The words *можно* (*mozhno*) and *нельзя* (*nel'zya*) are used in two grammatical structures:

### 1) **можно** (*mozhno*)/**нельзя** (*nel'zya*) + [infinitive form of verb]

The affirmative answer has the structure *Да, можно* (*Da, mozhno*), meaning "Yes, you can/may/are allowed," or simply *можно* (*mozhno*).

A negative answer has the structure *Нет, нельзя* (*Net, nel'zya*), meaning "No, it's not

allowed/permitted," or simply *нельзя* (*nel'zya*)

For example:

1. В самолете можно курить?  
- Нет, *нельзя*.  
*V samolete mozhno kurit'?*  
- *Net, nel'zya.*  
"Is smoking allowed on the plane?"  
- "No, it isn't."
2. В этом магазине можно расплачиваться карточкой?  
- Да, *можно*.  
*V etom magazine mozhno rasplachivat'sya kartochkoy?*  
- *Da, mozhno.*  
"Can I pay by card in this store?"  
- "Yes, you can."
3. Здесь можно играть в футбол?  
- *Можно*.  
*Zdes' mozhno igrat' v futbol?*  
- *Mozhno.*  
"Are we allowed to play football here?"  
- "Yes, you are."
4. Можно сесть?  
*Mozhno sest'?*  
"May I sit here?"
5. Здесь можно купить свежие *газеты*.  
*Zdes' mozhno kupit' svezhiye gazety.*  
"One can buy the latest newspapers here."

As you should notice, all of the above-mentioned sentences have no subject, or no "performer." Such sentences can be translated into English using passive constructions, as well as by using "it," "one," or "you." If the purpose of a question is clear, the word *можно* (*mozhno*) can be used alone without any verb in the infinitive form. For example, if a person is

pointing to an empty seat near another person in a café or train and asks можно? it's obvious that he wants permission to sit there. It's like, "May I sit here?" in English. If a person is pointing to something that is in the hands of another person, it's clear that he wants to ask to take a closer look. It's like the English phrase, "May I take a look?"

The second grammatical structure is:

**2) [noun/pronoun in dative case] + можно (*mozhno*) / нельзя (*nel'zya*) + [infinitive form of verb].**

The affirmative or negative answers will be the same as for the first grammatical structure.

For example:

1. Ему нельзя пить алкоголь.  
*Yemu nel'zya pit' alkogol'.*  
"He mustn't drink alcohol."
2. Им можно войти?  
*Im mozhno voyti?*  
"May they come in?"
3. Папе нельзя волноваться, у него больное сердце.  
*Pape nel'zya volnovat'sya, u nego bol'noye serdtse.*  
"Father mustn't worry; he has a sick heart."
4. Врач сказал моему брату, что ему нельзя заниматься спортом.  
*Vrach skazal moyemu bratu, chto yemu nel'zya zanimat'sya sportom.*  
"The doctor told my brother that he mustn't go out for sports."

### Language Tip: Spelling Rule

---

It's time for some spelling rules, and the focus of our lesson is the consonant [r], which can be pronounced in two ways.

1) The letter [r] is usually is pronounced like the English "-g" in "gas." For example:



---

<b>ГОСТЬ</b>	<b>город</b>
<i>gost'</i>	<i>gorat</i>
"guest"	"city"

---

2) If the letter [r] takes a position at the end of the word between the vowels [e] and [o] or [o] and [o], it should be pronounced as the English "v." For example:

---

<b>его</b>	<b>сегодня</b>
<i>yevvo</i>	<i>sevodnya</i>
"him"	"today"

---

\* The word много, meaning "many," is an exception to this rule, and it should be pronounced as *mnoqa*.

### Writing Rule

---

Please remember, after the consonants [r], [к], [х], [ж], [щ], [ш], and [ч], the vowels [я], [ю], and [ы] are never written, despite their pronunciation. Instead of these, you should write:

[a] instead of [я]

[y] instead of [ю]

[и] instead of [ы]

For example: **ЖИТЬ** (*zhit'*), meaning "to live;" **чаща** (*chashcha*), meaning "thicket;" **чудесный** (*chudesnyy*), meaning "wonderful;" and **машина** (*mashina*), meaning "car."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### The Russian Medical System

---

Each country has its own system of medical institutions, and Russia is no different. In every city, there are a number of polyclinics and hospitals, which can be divided into two big groups: governmental (or municipal) and private. There are also many special-function hospitals that provide advanced medical treatments. In accordance with the Constitution of the Russian Federation, all citizens have a right to free healthcare, which means that medical services should be provided for free. But, as of now, only basic medical care and emergency services are available without paying. One can rarely find an English-speaking doctor in governmental clinics. They're only available in private clinics, where prices are sometimes very expensive.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #24

## Talking Politics in Russia

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# 24

# RUSSIAN

1. АЛЕКС: Лера, ты знаешь, что скоро будут выборы? Ты за кого будешь голосовать?
2. ЛЕРА: За известного депутата Максимова. Я слышала, что он обещал построить новые школы и детские сады, а так же отремонтировать дороги.
3. АЛЕКС: А я слышал, что кроме этого, он обещал повысить пенсии.
4. ЛЕРА: Надеюсь, он сможет закрутить гайки чиновникам и хоть чуть-чуть уменьшить коррупцию.

# ROMANIZATION

1. ALEKS: Lera, ty znayesh', chto skoro budut vybory? Ty za kogo budesh' golosovat'?
2. LERA: Za izvestnogo deputata Maksimova. YA slyshala, chto on obeshchal postroit' novyye shkoly i detskiye sady, a tak zhe otremonirovat' dorogi.
3. ALEKS: A ya slyshal, chto krome etogo, on obeshchal povysit' pensii.
4. LERA: Nadeyus', on smozhet zakrutit' gayki chinovnikam i khot' chut'-chut' umen'shit' korruptsiyu.

# ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. ALEX: Lera, you know that there will be elections soon? Who will you vote for?
2. LERA: For the well-known deputy Maximov. I heard that he promised to build new schools and kindergartens, as well as to repair the roads.
3. ALEX: I've heard that, in addition to this, he promised to increase pensions.
4. LERA: I hope he'll be able to put the screws on officials and even to reduce corruption perhaps a little bit.

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
выборы	vybory	elections	noun	plural
коррупция	korrupsiya	corruption	noun	feminine
голосовать	golosovat'	to vote	verb	
обещать	obeshchat'	to promise	verb	
отремонтировать	otremontirovat'	to repair	verb	
повысить	povysit'	to increase, raise	verb	
уменьшить	umen'shit'	to reduce	verb	
закрутить гайки	zakrutit' gayki	put the screws on	phrase	
пенсия	pensiya	pension	noun	feminine
построить	postroit'	to build	verb	

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Когда будут следующие выборы?</b> <i>Kogda budut sleduyushchiye vybory?</i></p> <p>"When will the next elections be?"</p>	<p><b>За кого вы будете голосовать?</b> <i>Za kogo vy budete golosovat'?</i></p> <p>"Who will you vote for?"</p>
<p><b>Он обещал жениться, но обманул.</b> <i>On obeshchal zhenit'sya, no obmanul.</i></p> <p>"He promised to marry her, but he lied."</p>	<p><b>Он всегда сдерживает свои обещания.</b> <i>On vsegda sderzhivayet svoi obeshchaniya.</i></p> <p>"He always keeps his promises."</p>
<p><b>Правительство обещает наконец-то отремонтировать дороги.</b> <i>Pravitel'stvo obeshchayet nakonets-to otremontirovat' dorogi.</i></p> <p>"The government promises to finally repair the roads."</p>	<p><b>В этом году наша компания планирует повысить свою прибыль.</b> <i>V etom godu nasha kompaniya planiruyet povysit' svoyu pribyl'.</i></p> <p>"This year, our company is planning to increase its profits."</p>
<p><b>Как уменьшить размер файла?</b> <i>Kak umen'shit' razmer fayla?</i></p> <p>"How do I reduce the file size?"</p>	<p><b>Пенсия в России намного меньше, чем в Америке.</b> <i>Pensiya v Rossii namnogo men'she, chem v Amerike.</i></p> <p>"Pensions in Russia are much lower than in America."</p>

**Около моего дома построили огромный торговый центр.**

*Okolo moyego doma postroili ogromnyy trgovyy tsentr.*

"A big shopping mall was built near my house."

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **закрутить гайки (*zakrutit' gayki*)**

This can be translated as "put the screws on." Let's break down this phrase to see the meaning of its parts. The verb *закрутить* (*zakrutit'*) means "to screw," and the plural noun *гайки* (*gayki*) means "screw-nuts." So, the phrase literally means "to screw screw-nuts." The meaning of this phrase is "to make certain rules, orders, or requirements more severe or tough." This phrase is widely used in Russian newspapers, especially concerning topics

about governmental policy related to corruption, the responsibilities of officials, immigration, and taxes.

For example:

1. Правительство планирует закрутить гайки нелегальным *иммигрантам*  
*Pravitel'stvo planiruyet zakrutit' gayki nelegal'nym immigrantom.*  
"The government plans to put the screws on illegal immigrants."
2. Необходимо закрутить гайки всем коррупционерам в государственных *органах*.  
*Neobkhodimo zakrutit' gayki vsem korrupsioneram v gosudarstvennykh organakh.*  
"It's necessary to put the screws on officials in governmental authorities."

### **повысить (povysit')**

The second key word for this lesson is the verb *повысить (povysit')*, which has several meanings. The first meaning is "to transfer someone to a higher-paid, more responsible position." It can also be translated as "to promote."

For example:

1. Меня повысили на *работе*  
*Menya povysili na rabote.*  
"I got promoted at work."
2. После того, как его повысили, он перестал *общаться с коллегами*.  
*Posle того, kak yego povysili, on perestal obshchat'sya s kollegami.*  
"After he was promoted, he stopped communicating with colleagues."

The second meaning of this word is "to raise" or "to increase," for example, taxes, prices, blood pressure, etc.

For example:

1. В Украине повысили цены на бензин на *1 процент*.  
*V Ukraine povysili tseny na benzin na 1 protsent.*  
"In the Ukraine, the gasoline prices were raised by one percent."

2. У мамы повысилось давление.  
*U taty povysilos' davleniye.*  
"My mother's blood pressure became elevated."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson Is the Genitive Case of Singular Adjectives and Possessive Pronouns in Russian

**За известного депутата Максимова.**

*Za izvestnogo deputata Maksimova.*

**"For the well-known deputy Maximov."**

---

In this lesson, you'll start to learn about the genitive case of singular adjectives in Russian. The questions of the genitive case of singular adjectives are *Какоро?* (*Kakogo?*) for the masculine and neuter genders and *Какой?* (*Kakoy?*) for the feminine gender. These can be translated into English as "which?" or "what?"

### Formation of Adjectives in the Genitive Case

---

First, let's have a closer look at **masculine and neuter adjective endings**.

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a hard consonant have the ending [oro]. For example:

---

<b>Nominative case adjective</b>	<b>English translation</b>	<b>Genitive case adjective</b>
<i>blizkiy</i> (близкий)	"close"	<i>blizkogo</i> (близкого)
<i>dolgiy</i> (долгий)	"long"	<i>dolgogo</i> (долгого)
<i>tyagkiy</i> (мягкий)	"soft"	<i>tyagkogo</i> (мягкого)
<i>uzkoye</i> (узкое)	"narrow"	<i>uzkogo</i> (узкого)
<i>tikhoye</i> (тихое)	"silent"	<i>tikhogo</i> (тихого)



- Adjectives with a stem ending in a soft consonant (ж, ч, ш, щ) with an unstressed ending have the ending [ero]. For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Genitive case adjective
<i>siniy</i> (синий)	"blue"	<i>sinego</i> (синего)
<i>vecherniy</i> (вечерний)	"evening"	<i>vechernego</i> (вечернего)
<i>letneye</i> (летнее)	"summery"	<i>letnego</i> (летнего)
<i>mladshiy</i> (младший)	"younger"	<i>mladshego</i> (младшего)
<i>obshcheye</i> (общее)	"common"	<i>obshchego</i> (общего)

If the ending of an adjective is stressed, the ending changes to [oro]. For example, *bol'shoy* (большой), meaning "big," changes to *bol'shogo* (большого), and *chuzhoy* (чужой), meaning "foreign," changes to *chuzhogo* (чужого).

**Feminine adjectives** have the following endings:

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a hard consonant change their endings to [oy].

For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Genitive case adjective
<i>gromkaya</i> (громкая)	"loud"	<i>gromkoу</i> (громкой)
<i>vysokaya</i> (высокая)	"high"	<i>vysokoу</i> (высокой)
<i>zharkaya</i> (жаркая)	"hot"	<i>zharkoу</i> (жаркой)

- Adjectives with a stem ending in a soft consonant (ж, ч, ш, or щ) with an unstressed ending have the ending [ey]. For example:

Nominative case adjective	English translation	Genitive case adjective
<i>sinyaya</i> (синяя)	"blue"	<i>siney</i> (синей)

<i>vezuchaya</i> (везучая)	"lucky"	<i>vezuchey</i> (везучей)
<i>byvshaya</i> (бывшая)	"former"	<i>byvshey</i> (бывшей)

If the ending of an adjective is stressed, the ending changes to [ой]. For example, **большая** (*bol'shaya*), meaning "big," changes to **большой** (*bol'shoy*), and **чужая** (*chuzhaya*), meaning "foreign," changes to **чужой** (*chuzhoy*).

For example:

- Откуда вы приехали?  
 - Из солнечной *Японии*.  
*Otkuda vy priyekhali?*  
 - *Iz solnechnoy Yaponii.*  
 "Where are you from?"  
 - "From sunny Japan."
- Это книга известного писателя *Антон Чехова*.  
*Eto kniga izvestnogo pisatelya Antona Chekhova.*  
 "This is a book by the famous writer Anton Chekhov."
- Можно мне, пожалуйста, кусочек вот этого вкусного *пирога*?  
*Mozhno mne, pozhaluysta, kusochek vot etogo vkusnogo piroga?*  
 "Can I have a piece of this delicious cake, please?"
- Мама, ты где?  
 - Мы только что вышли из детской *поликлиники*.  
*Mama, ty gde?*  
 - *My tol'ko chto vyshli iz detskooy polikliniki.*  
 "Mom, where are you?"  
 - "We just left from the children's polyclinic."
- Мой дом находится около центрального *парка*.  
*Moy dom nakhoditsya okolo tsentral'nogo parka.*  
 "My house is situated near the central park."

6. У меня нет синей ручки, только *красная*.  
*U menya net siney ruchki, tol'ko krasnaya.*  
 "I don't have a blue pen—only red."

Now, let's take a look at the following table, which describes the possessive pronouns in the genitive case.

<b>Masculine and neuter gender</b>	<b>Feminine gender</b>	<b>English translation</b>
<b>моего</b>	<b>моей</b>	"my"
<b>твоего</b>	<b>твоей</b>	"your"
<b>нашего</b>	<b>нашей</b>	"our"
<b>вашего</b>	<b>вашей</b>	"your" (pl)
<b>того</b>	<b>той</b>	"that"
<b>этого</b>	<b>этой</b>	"this"

For example:

1. Это ноутбук моей старшей *сестры*.  
*Eto noutbuk moyey starshey sestry.*  
 "This is my older sister's laptop."
2. Ты не знаешь, как зовут того красивого молодого *человека*?  
*Ty ne znayesh', kak zovut togo krasivogo molodogo cheloveka?*  
 "Do you know what the name of that handsome young man is?"
3. Это машина вашего *сына*?  
*Eto mashina vashego syna?*  
 "Is this your son's car?"

4. Вы не видели моего ребёнка?  
*Vy ne videli moyego rebonka?*  
"Have you seen my child?"

### Pronunciation Tip

In this lesson, we'll study one more voicing rule. In previous lessons, you learned that all consonants in Russia form pairs of voiced and voiceless.

<b>Voiced</b>	б (b)	в (v)	г (g)	д (d)	з (z)	ж (zh)
<b>Voiceless</b>	п (p)	ф (f)	к (k)	т (t)	с (s)	ш (sh)

There are two very important rules:

1) If a voiceless consonant is followed by voiced one, it should be pronounced like its voiced counterpart.

For example:

*экзамен (ekzamen)*, meaning "exam," should be pronounced as *egzamen*.

*футбол (futbol)*, meaning "football," should be pronounced as *fudbol*.

*с друзьями (s druz'yami)*, meaning "with friends," should be pronounced as *z druz'yami*.

2) If a voiced consonant is followed by voiceless one, it should be pronounced like its voiceless counterpart.

For example:

*вторник (vtornik)*, meaning "Tuesday," should be pronounced as *ftornik*.

*ложка (lozhka)*, meaning "spoon," should be pronounced as *loshka*.

*пробка (probka)*, meaning "cork," should be pronounced as *propka*.

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

## Corruption and Political Humor in Russia

---

Russian people like to talk and joke about politics, corruption, and politicians very much. You can find a lot of sites with anecdotes on these topics, and the famous Russian comedians often joke about the scale of corruption in Russia, which has really become a national problem. According to the Corruption Perceptions Index published by Transparency International, the rank of Russia is 133 out of a possible 176. But the government does its best to fight it. New methods of attacking corruption are developed, and criminal cases against corrupt officials are opened, but still there is much left to do.

## LESSON NOTES

# Lower Beginner S1 #25

## Visiting the Russian Airport

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 11 Cultural Insight

# 25

# RUSSIAN

1. ЛЕРА: Ну всё, счастливого пути!
2. АЛЕКС: Спасибо.
3. ЛЕРА: Ты ничего не забыл? Паспорт, посадочный талон?
4. АЛЕКС: Нет, всё взял.
5. ЛЕРА: Алекс, а то не твой рюкзак коричневого цвета? Около столика кафе, где мы пили кофе.
6. АЛЕКС: Ой, чуть не забыл! Спасибо, что напомнила. Ну всё, пока.
7. ЛЕРА: До скорой встречи!

# ROMANIZATION

1. LERA: Nu vso, schastlivogo puti!
2. ALEKS: Spasibo.
3. LERA: Ty nichego ne zabyt? Pasport, posadochnyy talon?
4. ALEKS: Net, vsyo vzyal.
5. LERA: Aleks, a to ne tvoy ryukzak korichneвого tsveta? Okolo stolika kafe, gde my pili kofe?
6. ALEKS: Oy, chut' ne zabyt! Spasibo, chto napomnila. Nu vsyo, пока.

CONT'D OVER

7. LERA: Do skoroy vstrechi!

## ENGLISH

1. LERA: Well, Godspeed!

2. ALEX: Thank you.

3. LERA: You didn't forget anything, did you? Passport, boarding pass?

4. ALEX: No, I took everything.

5. LERA: Alex, is that brown bag yours? Near the table at the cafe where we drank coffee.

6. ALEX: Oh, I was about to forget! Thank you for reminding me. Ok, bye!

7. LERA: See you!

## VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Счастливого пути!	schastlivogo puti	Godspeed!	phrase	
пить	pit'	to drink	verb	
забыть	zabyt'	to forget	verb	
посадочный талон	posadochniy talon	a boarding pass	adjective + noun	



рюкзак	ryukzak	backpack	noun	masculine
цвет	tsvet	color	noun	masculine
напомнить	napomnit'	to remind	verb	
взять	vzyat'	to take	verb	
счастливый	schastlivyy	happy	adjective	masculine
стол	stolik	table	noun	masculine

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Остается только пожелать счастливого пути перед отъездом.</b>  <i>Ostayetsya tol'ko pozhelat' schastlivogo puti pered ot"yezdom.</i></p> <p>"Before the departure there is nothing left but to wish a safe trip home."</p>	<p><b>Что ты будешь пить: вино или шампанское?</b>  <i>Chto ty budesh' pit': vino ili shampanskoye?</i></p> <p>"What are you going to drink: wine or champagne?"</p>
<p><b>Он слишком много пьёт.</b>  <i>On slishkom mnogo p'yot.</i></p> <p>"He drinks too much (alcohol)."</p>	<p><b>Давайте пить чай!</b>  <i>Davayte pit' chay!</i></p> <p>"Let's have some tea!"</p>
<p><b>Как ты мог забыть о нашей встрече?!</b>  <i>Kak ty mog zabyt' o nashey vstreche?!</i></p> <p>"How could you forget about our meeting?"</p>	<p><b>Как ты мог забыть об этом!</b>  <i>Kak ty mog zabyt' ob etom!</i></p> <p>"How could you have forgotten about it!"</p>
<p><b>Ваш паспорт и посадочный талон, пожалуйста.</b>  <i>Vash pasport i posadochnyy talon, pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>"Can I see your passport and your boarding pass, please?"</p>	<p><b>Вот ваш посадочный талон.</b>  <i>Vot vash posadochnyy talon.</i></p> <p>"Here's your boarding pass."</p>

<p><b>Я хочу купить большой, спортивный рюкзак.</b>  <i>Ya khochu kupit' bol'shoy, sportivnyy ryukzak.</i></p> <p>"I want to buy a big, sporty backpack."</p>	<p><b>Какой твой любимый цвет?</b>  <i>Kakoy tvoy lyubimyy tsvet?</i></p> <p>"What's your favorite color?"</p>
<p><b>У него здоровый цвет лица.</b>  <i>U nego zdorovyy tsvet litsa.</i></p> <p>"He's got a healthy complexion."</p>	<p><b>Мне пришлось взять на себя большую часть обязанностей.</b>  <i>Mne prishlos' vzyat' na sebya bol'shuyu chast' obyazannostey.</i></p> <p>"I had to take up the majority of responsibilities."</p>
<p><b>Ты счастливый человек: у тебя есть любящая семья и хорошая работа.</b>  <i>Ty schastlivyy chelovek: u tebya yest' lyubyashchaya sem'ya i khoroshaya rabota.</i></p> <p>"You're a lucky man. You have a loving family and a good job."</p>	<p><b>Здравствуй, я хочу забронировать столик на вечер.</b>  <i>Zdravstvuyte, ya khochu zabronirovat' stolik na vecher.</i></p> <p>"Hello, I want to reserve a table for the evening."</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### Счастливого пути! (*schastlivogo puti*)

The first key phrase for this lesson is Счастливого пути! (*schastlivogo puti*), which can be translated into English as "Godspeed!" The adjective счастливого (*schastlivogo*) means "happy" (in the genitive case), and the masculine noun пути (*puti*) means "way." So, this phrase literally means "happy way." You can hear this phrase at a railway station or an airport. This phrase is used when we see off our relatives or friends to a long journey and want to wish them a good and safe trip.

For example:

1. - Всё, надо идти на посадку.  
Счастливого пути  
*Vso, nado idti na posadku.*  
- *Schastlivogo puti!*  
"OK, I have to go for boarding."  
- "Godspeed!"
2. Завтра я уезжаю в командировку!  
- Счастливого пути!  
*Zavtra ya uyezzhayu v komandirovku*  
- *Schastlivogo puti!*  
"Tomorrow, I'm leaving on a business trip!"  
- "Have a nice trip!"

### **цвет (tsvet)**

The second key word for this lesson is the masculine noun **цвет (tsvet)**, which can be translated into English as "color." This word has a direct and an indirect meaning. The direct meaning is "color."

For example:

1. Какого цвета флаг вашей страны?  
*Kakogo tsveta flag vashey strany?*  
"What color is the flag of your country?"
2. Тебе очень идет розовый цвет.  
*Tebe ochen' idet rozovyy tsvet.*  
"The color pink suits you very much."

The indirect meaning of this noun is "the best part of..." (youth, the nation, society, etc).

For example:

1. Эти спортсмены - цвет нации  
*Eti sportsmeny - tsvet natsii!*  
"These athletes are the cream of the nation!"

2. Эти люди - цвет нашего общества!  
*Eti lyudi - tsvet nashogo obshchestva!*  
 "These people are the cream of our society!"

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson Is Using the Genitive Case After Adjectives Describing Color

**Алекс, а то не твой рюкзак коричневого цвета? Около столика кафе, где мы пили кофе.**

***Aleks, a to ne tvoy ryukzak korichnevogo tsveta? Okolo stolika kafe, gde my pili kofe?***  
**"Alex, is that brown bag yours? Near the table of the cafe where we drank coffee?"**

In this lesson, you'll learn about the use of the genitive case after adjectives describing color, as well as about the grammatical structure for the phrases "that's why" and "because." So, let's start. First of all, let's review the most common adjectives that express color in Russian (many of them, you saw in our previous lessons). They are:

Adjective	English translation	Adjective	English translation
<i>zholtyy</i> (жёлтый)	"yellow"	<i>goluboy</i> (голубой)	"light blue"
<i>zelyonuy</i> (зелёный)	"green"	<i>chornuy</i> (чёрный)	"black"
<i>krasnuy</i> (красный)	"red"	<i>fiioletovuy</i> (фиолетовый)	"purple"
<i>siniy</i> (синий)	"dark blue"	<i>rozovuy</i> (розовый)	"pink"
<i>oranzhevuy</i> (оранжевый)	"orange"	<i>korichnevuy</i> (коричневый)	"brown"
<i>seryuy</i> (серый)	"grey"	<i>belyuy</i> (белый)	white

Here is the rule:

If you respond to the question "What color is it?" the color should be put in the masculine, singular, genitive form.

Why? Because, in this case, the adjective refers to the noun цвет ("color"), which is of masculine gender.

For example:

1. Какого цвета твоя машина?  
- Красного.  
*Kakogo tsveta tvoya mashina?*  
- *Krasnogo.*  
"What color is your car?"  
- "Red."
2. Какого цвета твоя лошадь?  
- Коричневого.  
*Kakogo tsveta tvoya loshad'?*  
- *Korichnevogo.*  
"What color is your horse?"  
- "Brown."
3. Платья какого цвета ты любишь?  
- Черного или белого.  
*Plat'ya kakogo tsveta ty lyubish'?*  
- *Chernogo ili belogo.*  
"What color dresses do you like?"  
- "Black or white."

However, there is one more rule:

If you want to answer the question by starting with "It is....," the color should be put in the nominative case and should correspond to the gender and number of the noun.

For example:

1. Какого цвета твой мотоцикл?  
- Он чёрный.

2. *Kakogo tsveta tvoy mototsikl?*  
- *On chornyy.*

3. "What color is your bike?"  
- "It's black."

In this sentence, the adjective "black" took the masculine, singular, nominative form because it refers to the word "bike," not to "color."

2.

1. *Какого цвета вода в Чёрном море?*  
- *Она синяя.*

2. *Kakogo tsveta voda v Chornom more?*  
- *Ona sinyaya.*

3. "What color is the water in the Black Sea?"  
- "It's blue."

In this sentence, the adjective "blue" took the feminine, singular, nominative form because it refers to the word "water," which is feminine.

Now, let's compare two sentences:

1. *Какого цвета твой велосипед?*  
- *Голубого.*

*Kakogo tsveta tvoy velosiped?*

- *Golubogo.*

"What color is your bicycle?"

- "Light blue."

...and...

1. Какого цвета твой велосипед?  
- Он голубой.  
*Kakogo tsveta tvoj velosiped?*  
- On goluboy.  
"What color is your bicycle?"  
- "It's light blue."

As you can see, in the first sentence, the adjective was put in the genitive case, whereas in the second example, it was used in the nominative case.

## Language Expansion

---

Do you know the difference between the words *поэтому* (*poetomu*), meaning "that's why," and *потому что* (*potomu chto*), meaning "because," in Russian? If no, then here is a rule: The words *потому что* (*potomu chto*), meaning "because," state a reason, whereas the word *поэтому* (*poetomu*), meaning "that's why," points out the consequence or the result.

Here is the grammar structure:

[A] *потому что/поэтому* [B]

Let's compare...

1. Я знаю русский язык, потому что я жил в Москве.  
*Ya znayu russkiy yazyk, potomu chto ya zhil v Moskve.*  
"I know Russian because I lived in Moscow."

...and...

1. Я жил в Москве, поэтому я знаю русский язык.  
*Ya zhil v Moskve, poetomu ya znayu russkiy yazyk.*  
"I lived in Moscow, and that's why I know Russian."

In the first sentence, the words *потому что я жил в Москве* ("because I lived in Moscow") describe the reason I know Russian. In the second sentence, the words *поэтому я знаю русский язык* ("that's why I know Russian") point out the result of my living in Russia.

Here are other examples:

1. Я кушаю дома, потому что не люблю кафе и рестораны.  
*Ya kushayu doma, potomu chto ne lyublyu kafe i restorany.*  
"I eat at home because I don't like cafes and restaurants."
2. Я не люблю кафе и рестораны, поэтому кушаю дома.  
*Ya ne lyublyu kafe i restorany, poetomu kushayu doma.*  
"I don't like cafes and restaurants, and that's why I eat at home."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Moscow Airports

---

There are three main airports in Moscow: Sheremetyevo, Domodedovo, and Vnukovo International Airports. Regarding passenger traffic, Domodedovo Airport is the largest airport in Russia, but in 2011, it was the airport where a lot of people were killed because of a suicide bomber. Modern Russian airports are like typical international airports, with a lot of duty-free shops and cafes. In Sheremetyevo, you also have the option to register for your flight using Skype. However, the security control in all Russian airports is more severe than in many other countries. The transportation from all three airports to Moscow is very convenient. You can use the aeroexpress train, and in approximately thirty-five minutes, you'll be in Moscow.